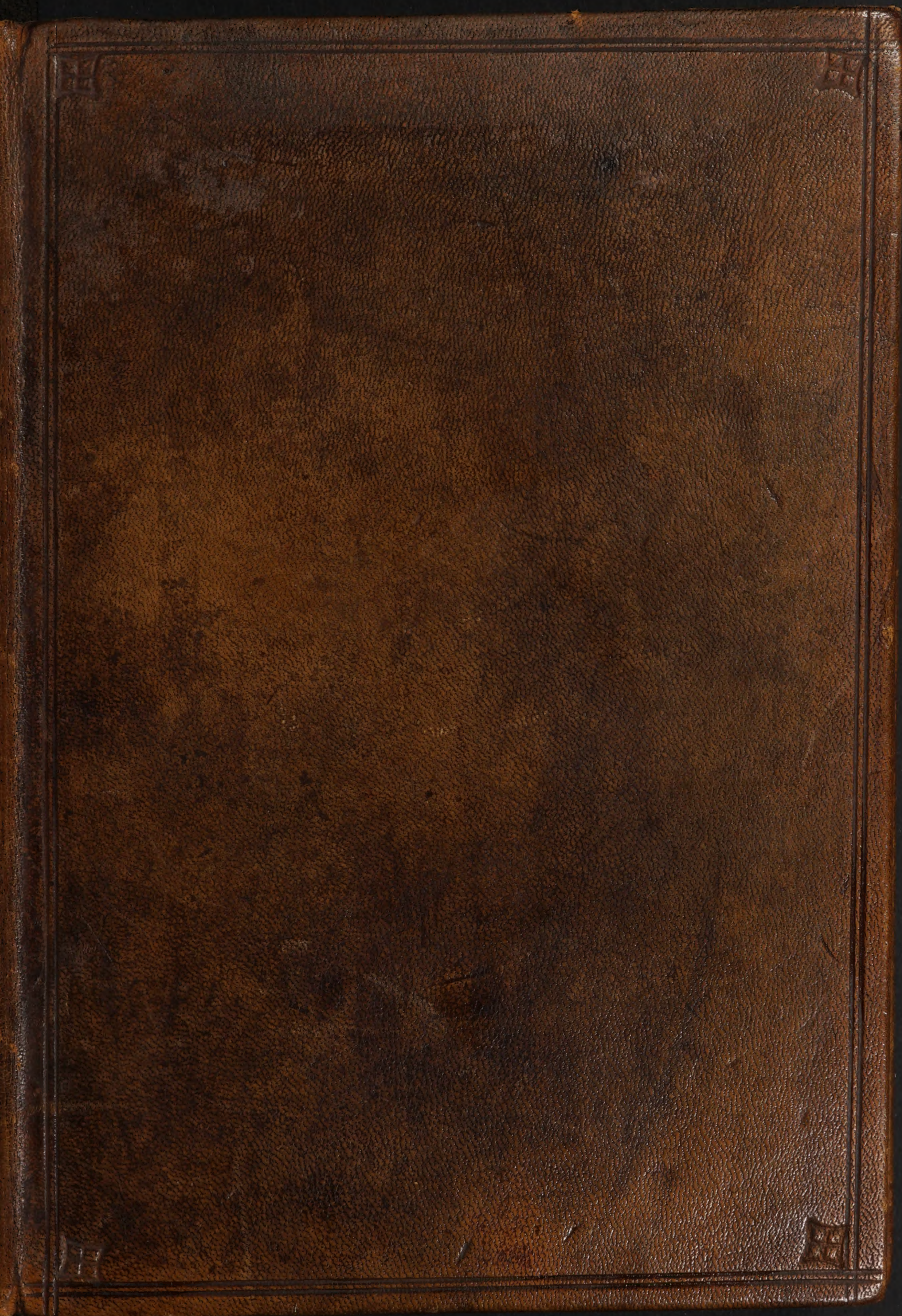




THE
BIRTH OF
MANKYNDE

ROESSLIN

1575





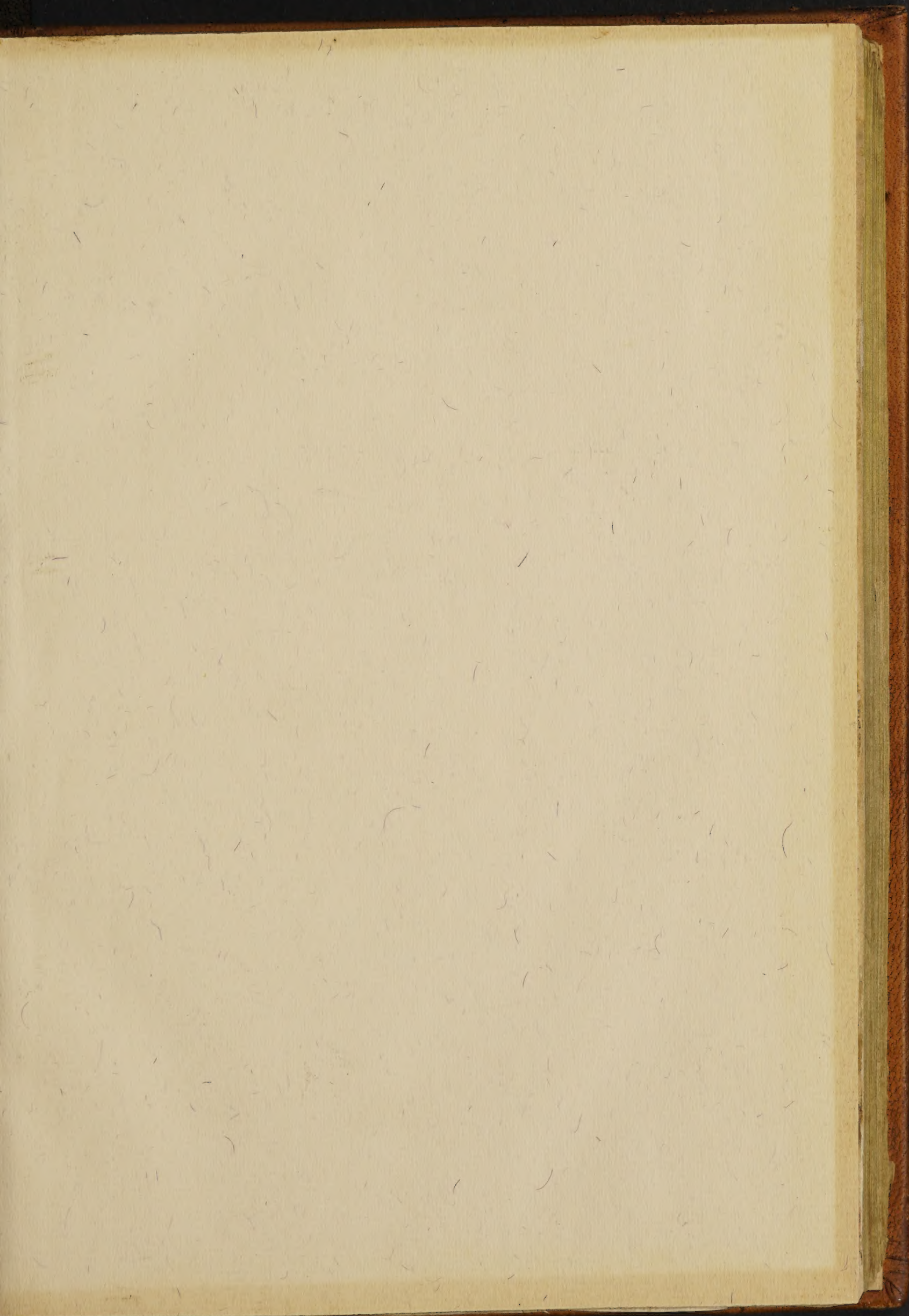


5514. / B

S.T.C. 21159.

[London: J. Jugge? - 1585?]

Anatomical illus. wanting









Rick

Wright

The Birth

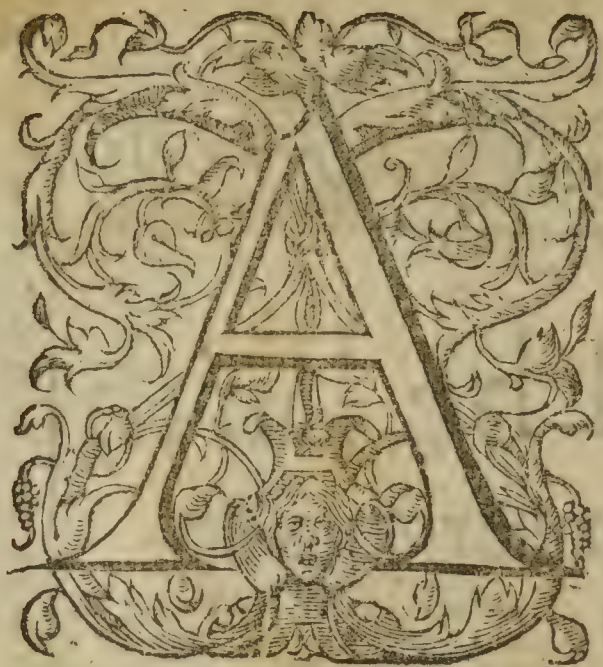
of mankynde, other-
wyle named the wo-
mans booke.

Newly set forth, corrected, and
augmented. whose con-
tentes ye may reade in
the Table of the
booke, and
most
plainely in the
prologue.

By Thomas Raynalde
Phisition.

*Elizabeth the first is the
true lover of this booke*





Al be it some Aristar-
chus may perhappes
fynde some lacke of
faythfulnes and dili-
gence in this worke:
yet there is none so
froward to deny, but
that there is some
fruite and profyte to
be found therein, see-
yng that it commeth
nowe abroad muche

more enlarged and encreased, and more dili-
gently corrected then it was before eyther in the
Latine or in the Englyshe. And where before in
the other printes, there lacked matter necessarie
to the openyng and declaration of the fygures
parteyning to the inner partes: it is nowe so
playnely set forth, that the simplest Wydwyfe
which can reade, may both vnderstande for her
better instruction, & also other women that haue
neede of her helpe, the more commoditie. Where-
fore my desyre is, that it may be receyued
and practised of Wydwyues and all other
matrones, with no lesse successe then

it is with good wyll and
desyre wytten to
profite,
and to doo good
to other.

29374



The Table of this present Booke.



Put a Prologue
to the women
readers.

In this. i. Cha-
piter is briefly
declared the co-
tentes of the
first Booke.

Capit. i.

In how many
coates the bo-
dy is lapped or
involued.

Cap. ii.

Here is declared what the Muscles be. Cap. iii.

Fol. iiii.

Of the Bell, called Peritoneum.

Cap. iiii.

Fol. v.

The declaration of the names and nature of
the Matrix. Cap. v.

Fol. vi.

Of the Wombe & his partes. Cap. vi.

Fol. vii.

Of the Mother port. Cap. vii.

Fol. x.

Of the vesselles of seede, called the stones, with
other thereto appertayning.

Cap. viii.

Fol. xi.

Of the seede bryngers. Cap. ix.

eodem.

Of the office and vse of these seede bryngers.

Cap. x.

Fol. xiiii.

Of the way by the which the seede is sent from
the stones, to the angles or corners of the ma-
trix. Cap. xi.

Fol. xix.

Here is declared the situation of the bladder in
women. Cap. xii.

Fol. xxi.

A. ii.

Of

The Table.

Of the baynes which resort to the Matrix, and the partes thereof. Item, of the Termes and theyr course, with the causes thereof. Cap. xiii. fol. xxiii.

Of the thre calles or wrappers wherein the infant is lapped. Cap. xiiii. fol. xxix.

Which of the thre Matrix baines conterne the Termes, and how the milke cometh to the womans breastes. Cap. xv. fol. xxxv.

The declaration by letters of the figures following, wherein be set forth to the eye euery part in woman mentioned in this booke before.

Of the fyrst figure. fol. xlii.

Of the seconde figure. fol. xlv.

Of the thyrde figure. fol. xlvii.

The fourth figure. fol. xlviii.

The fyfth figure. fol. xlix.

The syxth figure. eodem.

The. vii. viii. and. ix. figures. fol. l.

The Table of the seconde Booke.



Of the tyme of byrth, and which is called naturall or unnaturall. Cap. i. fol. li.

Of easy and breasy, difficult, or dolorous deliuerance, & the causes of it, with the signes how to know and foresee the

same. Cap. ii. fol. liii.

How a woman with chyld shall vse her selfe, and what remedies be for them that haue hard

The Table.

hard labour. Cap. iii.	Fol. lvi.
Remedies and medicines by the which the labour may be made tollerable, easie, and without great payne. Cap. iiii.	Fol. lxxii.
How the secondine or seconde byrth shalbe forced to issue forth, yf it come not freely of his owne kynde. Cap. v.	Fol. lxxix.
How many thynges chaunce to the women after theyr labour, and how to auoyde, defende, or to remedie the same. Cap. vi.	Fol. lxxxiii.
Of aborcementes or vntimely byrthes, and the causes of it, and by what remedies it may be defended, holpen, & eased. Cap. vii.	Fol. lxxxix.
Of dead byrthes, and by what signes or tokens it may be knowen, by what meanes it may also be expelled. Cap. ix.	Fol. xc.
In the last Chapter of this booke be briefly resited certayne expert medicines, whiche be most requisite to the chiefe purpose intended in this present booke. Cap. x.	Fol. xcvi.

The thyrde Booke.



In this fyrst Chapter of this thirde booke is fyrst declared the matters therein contained, & then how the infant newly borne must be handled, nourished, and looked to. Cap. i.
Fol. lxxviii.

The Table.

Of the Nurse and her mylke, and how long the chylde should sucke. Cap. ii.	fol. C.
Of diuers diseases & infirmities which chaunce to chylde: lately borne, and the remedies therefore. Cap. iii.	fol. Ciii.
Of the fluxe and ouermuch loosenes of the belly. Cap. iiii.	fol. Ciiii.
To vnloose the chylde, beyng bounde.	fol. Cv.
Remedie for the Cough and distillation or ca- tarrhes of the head.	fol. Cvi.
Remedie for short wynde.	fol. Cvii.
Against wheales or bladders on the tong. eodem.	
Of exulceration or clefture, chappynge or chy- nyng of the mouth.	fol. Cviii.
Of apostumation and runnyng of the eares. fol.	eodem.
Of apostumation in the head.	fol. Cix.
Of the swelling or boining of the eyes.	eodem.
Of the scumme or whyte of the eye.	eodem.
Against immoderate heate of the fever.	eodem.
Against frettyng or gnawynge in the belly. fol. Cr.	
Agaynst swellynge of the body.	eodem.
Agaynst often sneesynge.	eodem.
Of wheelkes in the body, and the cure.	fol. Cxi.
Agaynst swellynge of the Coddeg.	eodem.
Agaynst swellynge of the Naupill.	eodem.
Agaynst vnsleepynesse.	fol. Cxii.
Agaynst verryng or the hyckate.	eodem.
Agaynst often parbreakynge by weakenesse and feyntnesse of the stomache.	fol. Cxiii.
Agaynst terrible dreames.	fol. Cxiiii.
Agaynst	

The Table.

Agaynst isſuyng forth of the fundement gutte.	
folio.	eodem.
Agaynst Tenasmus.	eodem.
Agaynst wormes in the belly.	eodem.
Of chafyng oz gallyng of any place of the body.	
fol.	Cxvi.
Of the falling sickneſſe.	eodem.
Consumption oz pynnyng away of the body.	
fol.	Cxvii.
Of laſſitude, wearyneſſe, oz heauyneſſe of the chyldeſ body.	eodem.
Of tremblyng of the body, oz of certayne members of the body, called the paſſie.	fol. Cxviii.
Agaynst the ſtrangury oz ſtone, with ſtoppyng of the brine.	eodem.
Of gogle eyes, oz looking a ſquint.	fol. Cxix.

The fourth booke.



Cap. iii.

If ſuche thynges the which ſhalbe entreated of in this fourth booke. Cap. i. fol. cxx. Of conceptiō, & how many wayes it may be hindred oz letted. Cap. ii. fol. eodem. Howe many wayes conception may be letted, & how the cauſes may be known.

fol. Cxxi.

How

The Table.

How to knowe whether lacke of conception be
of the woman or of the man, and how it may
be perceiued whether she be conceaued or no.

Cap. iiii.

f. fol. Cxxiii.

Of certayne remedies and medicines whiche
may further the woman to conceaue. Cap. v.

f. fol.

Cxxiiii.

Of diuers bellifying receiptes.

f. fol. Cxxvi.

Of the causes and remedies for dandriffe of the
head.

f. fol. Cxxvii.

To take away heere from places where it is un-
seemely.

f. fol. Cxxviii.

To do away frekens or other spottes in the face.

f. fol.

Cxxix.

To destroy wartes and suche lyk excrecenss on
the face, or els where.

eodem.

To cleare and claryfie the skinne in the handes,
face, or other part of the body.

f. fol. eodem.

To souple and molifie the ruggednesse of the
skinne.

f. fol. Cxxx.

Agaynst sodayne rylnges of pymples through
vnikind heate in the face, or els where.

eodem.

To keepe and preserue the teeth cleane.

eodem.

Of stinkyng breath.

f. fol. eodem.

Of the ranke sauour of the armeholes.

eodem.

¶ Here endeth the Table.

A Prologue to the women readers.



Ere in the beginning
of this presente Pro-
logue, I will folow the
example of them, whi-
che when they bid any
ghestes to dynner or
supper, are wont fyrst
to declare what shall
be their cheare, what
fare, & how many dy-
shes they shall haue,

praying the to take it in good woorth, & to looke
for neither better ne worse then hath been men-
tioned of: And euen so here wyl I doo. Before
that ye enter into the readyng of this little trea-
tise, I shall succinctly & in few wordes resite the
summe & cheefe contentes of the same, with the
btilitie and profite. which may ensue to the dili-
gent and attentife ouerreader thereof, to the end
that ye of these thynges beyng fyrst wel aduerti-
sed, may haue the more or lesse courage to em-
ploy your labour in ouerloking and perusing of
the same. For commonly it doth occasionate any
man to be the more prompt, redy, and wyllyng
to take payne, when he is assured or certified of
the profite, purpose, and fruite therof comming:
and lyke wyse it is a great pricke or allurement,
entising and mouing a man to reade any booke,
when he is somewhat fyrst admonished of the
matters comprehended and contayned therein.

The entent of
the Auctour.

Wherefore nowe to come to our purpose, ye

B. i.

shall

The Prologue.

The more part
of this booke
translated into
English thre
or foure yeeres
past.

The name of
this booke.

shal vnderstand that about thre or foure yeeres
past, a certayne studious and diligent clarke,
at the request and desyre of diuers honest and
sadde matrones, beyng of his acquaintaunce,
dyd translate out of Latine into English a great
part of this booke, entitulyng it accordyng to
the Latine inscription De partu hominis, that
is to say, Of the byrth of Mankinde: which we
now doo name, The womans booke, for so
much as the most part, or well neare all therein
entreated of, dooth concerne and touch onely
Women. In which his translation he varied
or declyned nothyng at all from the steppes of
his Latine aucthour, obseruyng more fidelytie
in translatyng, then choyse or discretion at that
time in admittynge and allowyng many thinges
in the same booke, greatly needyng admonition
and wary aduise or counsel to the readers, which
otherwise might sometimes vse that for a helpe,
the which should turne to a hinderance. Where-
fore I reuoluyng and earnestly reuysyng from
top to toe the sayd booke, and here withall consi-
dering the manyfolde vtilitie and profite which
thereby mought ensue to all women (as tou-
chyng that purpose) yf it were more narrowly
looked ouer, and with a straighter iudgement
more exactly euery thyng therein pondred and
tryed, thought my labour and paynes shoulde
not be euyl employed, ne vnthankefully accep-
ted and receyued of all honest, discrete, and sage
women, yf I after good and diligent perusyng
thereof, dyd correct and amende such faultes in
it,

The Prologue.

it, as seemed worthy of the same, and to aduise the readers what thynges were good, or intol-
erable to be vsed, which were dangerous, and
which were bitterly to be exchued. The which
thyng I haue not onely so done, but ouer this,
haue therewithto adioyned and annexed dyuers
other more experimented & more familiar medi-
cines. And farther haue in the fyrst booke set
foorth, and evidently declared, all the inwarde
partes of women (such as were necessary to be
known to our purpose) and that not onely in
wordes, but also in liuely and expresse figures,
by the which every part before in the booke des-
cribed, may in maner be as exactly and clearly
perceined, as though ye were present at the cut-
tyng open of Anathomie of a dead woman.

And thinke not the vtilitie and profite of this
fyrst booke, and knowledge thereof to be litle or
of small value, but take it as the foundation
and ground, by the perceiuerance wherof, your
wittes and vnderstandyng shalbe illuminate
and lyghtened, the better to vnderstande, howe
every thyng cometh to passe within your bo-
dies in tyme of conception, of bearyng, and of
byrth. And further, by the perfect knowledge of
this booke, ye shall clearly perceiue the reason
of many diseases which happen peculiarly to
women, and the causes thereof, by which per-
ceiuerance, agayne ye shall haue the redye
vnderstanding how to withstande and remedy
the sayd infirmities or diseases. For note ye wel,
that as there is no man, whatsoever he be, that

Many thynges
annexed & new-
ly added to this
booke.

The contentes
of the fyrst
booke.

How profitable
the fyrst booke is.

The vtilite of
a perfect know-
ledge of Ana-
thomie.

W. it.

shall

The Prologue.

shall become an absolute and perfect Physitian, vnlesse he haue an absolute and perfect knowledge of all the inwardes & outwardes of mans & womans body: euen so shall ye neuer groundlye vnderstande the matters conteyned in the seconde booke, or any other communication, or wytyng, touchyng the same intent, except ye first haue true and iust cognoissauce in the first booke. Agayne, when that a woman cometh to a Physitian for counsell, concernyng somethyng that may be amisse in the part: the answer of the Physitian, and reasonable allegation of causes to the same infirmitie, is many tymes obscure, darke, and strange, to be comprehended by the woman, for lacke of due knowledge of the situation, maner, & fashion of the inwardes. And truly when a person is sicke or diseased in any part, it is halfe a comfort, yea halfe his health to vnderstand in what part the disease is, and how that part lyeth in the body. This knowledge also ministreth yet a farther engin and policie, to inuent infinitely the better how the medicine should be applyed, & after the most profitable sort ministred & set to the diseased plot. To be short, all the witnes and artificiall craftie inuention, and diuers maners of ministrations in the noble science of Physicke, proceedeth & springeth of the profound knowledge of Anathomie. Therefore mine aduise & bitter counsel is, that al womē in whose handes this litle booke shall chaunce to come, with all diligence do force them selues perfectly to the vnderstanding of this first booke: well

The counsaile
of the aucthour
to the readers.

The Prologue.

well assuryng them that they shall not repent
them of theyr small paynes bestowed in that be-
halfe. And to the ende that euery thing myght
be the playner and more easye to attaine vnto, I
haue at the latter end of the foresayd fyrst booke,
set the figures which represent such matters as
were entreated of in the booke before, and also
haue therto annexed a sufficient declaration and
exposition by letters, of all partes and parcelles
conteyned in the sayde figures.

In the seconde booke we shall declare the dy-
uers sortes and maners of the deliuerance or
byrth of mankynde, and all the daungers, pe-
rils, & other cases happening to the labouring
woman at that season, with remedies and ma-
nyfolde medicines concernyng the same, where
also we haue not omitted ne left out anye medi-
cine beyng fyrst in the olde booke, but haue in
many places rectified and amended the same,
accordyng to reason and the lawes of phisicke:
and besydes this, haue added thereto diuers o-
ther salutarie and effectuall medicines, suche as
either I my selfe, or other phisitions, being yet
alyue at this day, haue experimented and prac-
tised. Furthermore, in this second booke ye may
fynde diuers remedies whereby to prouoke the
termes or flowres (when that needeth) or to re-
straine or stoppe same whē they issue more large-
ly then nature dooth requyre, with many other
matters, to long here to be rehearsed.

In the thyrde booke shalbe entreated, of the
election and choyse, by certayne signes and to-

The conten-
tes of the se-
conde booke.

Many truly
experimen-
ted medici-
nes added to
this booke.

Things
entreated of
in the thirde
booke.

The Prologue.

kenes of a good Nurse, whiche may foster and byrnyng by the chyld beynge borne. Item medicines encreasynge, dimynyshynge, attenuatynge, engrossynge, and amending the mylke in the Nurses brestes. Also remedies for many and sundrye diseases, whiche oft times chaunce vnto infantes after their byrth.

What is
conteyned in
the fourth
booke.

In the fourth and last booke, we wyll shewe what commune of conception, with the causes hynderynge or fartherynge the same, shewynge certayne counsaile and remedies whereby (by the grace of GOD) the vnfruitful may be made more fruitefull, and impedimentes of conception, by vertue of medicines, remoued and overcome, the woman beynge made the more apt to conceyue. And farther in this laste booke shall be vttered and sette forth certayne enibellishynge receiptes, concerning only honest & healthsome decoration and clenlynesse, alwayes moste lovable and commendable in a woman, as to scoure and clense the head, to cause the heere to keepe his naturall colour, to preserue the heere from fallynge away, to take away heere from certayne places, where beynge, it causeth some deformitie or vnseemelynesse in a person, to subtyle and cleare the skynne in the face or other where, to remoue and to doo away spottes, frekens, and other suche lyke displeasaunte markes and tokens, to supple and molifye the skynne beynge rugged and rough: with other nice suche lyke matters. to long here to be rehearsed, the whiche truly are not of anye prudent

The Prologue.

dent person to be reiected, imprinted, or display-
sed, forasmuche as I teache nothing in that
place, but that only whiche may make to the ho-
nest, comely, and commendable conceyving and
maynteynyng of the inset and naturall beautie
in a woman, bitterly abhorryng and despyng all
fardynge, paintyng, and counterfeit cast colours,
whiche of some damnable and misproude peo-
ple be dayly vsed, suche as by all meanes possi-
ple seeke and seache more the abhominable and
deuillish painting & garish setting forth of their
mortal carcases (the better thereby to commend
it vnto the eyes of folish & fonde men) then by
honest, sober, debonayre, & gentyll maners, so to
demeane their lyfe, that they may therby rather
obteyne the loue, amitie, and hartie perpetuall
faueur, fyrst of God, & then of all honest, discrete
and godly wyse men. Thus nowe to be short, I
haue in as compendious maner as the matter
woulde suffer, set before your eyes the cheefe and
principal contentes comprehended in this lytle
volume. And now remaineth there nothing els
but only to require the beneuolent fauour and
good acceptation of this my labour and paynes
spent in the compilyng of these foresayde mat-
ters, praying, that as it hath ben to me payne-
full in the composyng thereof, so it may be both
pleasant and fruitefull to al women (for whose
sake & only respect it is set forth) in the reading
thereof. Howbeit, I am not ignorant ne blythe
that manye there are, before whose syght this
booke shall fynde small grace, and lesse fauour.

Against
painting of
womens
faces.

The bene-
uolencie of
the reader
required.

The Prologue.

Harde to please
many iudg-
mentes.

The maner
of Poets in
tymes past.

The difficultie
to concyle the
good wyll of
peruert people.

So harde a thing it is to wyte or endite any matter whatsoeuer it be, that shoulde be able to sustayne and abyde the variable iudgement, and to obteyne or winne the constant loue and allowaunce of euerye man, especiall ye if it conteyne in it any noueltie or vniwont strangenes. Therefore the auncient Poetes in tymes passed, when that they enterprysed any new or strange workes, were wont in the frunte of the same, with greate protestation, to inuocate and call vppon all the goddes and goddesses by name, requiring them fauourably to aspyre, ayde, and prosper their attempted purpose, to the end that by their obteyned fauour, it myght be the more acceptable and gracious to all suche as shoulde it beholde and reade, whose exampl right necessary and needeful it were that I here shoulde deuoutly ensue and folowe, so that I coulde fyrst beleue that by suche maner of inuocation, myght be allured and wonne the beneuolencie and wylling fauour of all suche in whose hādes this present booke should happen to fall. But truly I do suppose, that although I shoulde call downe all the nine noble Muses out of the famous mount of Hellicon, or praye to be assistent the three lounge graces, or great Apollo, god, maister, and cheefe inuentour of the nature of all hearbes and other medicines, or Esculapius cheefe patrone and president in the worthy science of Physicke, or wittie Mercurie with his doulse and sugred eloquence, with sweete Suada, goddessse of all perswasion, with

The Prologue.

with all other the goddes and goddesses what
euer they bee, in whom ingenious Poetes do
faine to be a maiestie, myght, and power, to
encline the hartes of men for to delyte and take
pleasure in any suche thyng which fyrst shalbe
by their godhead allowed and fauoured: though
(I say) all these shoulde firmly conspyre in one
together, and bende them vtterly to the most of
theyr hygh puissaunce, to sacre, halowe, yea and
with their holye poetical spirite to breathe ouer
this booke, yet shoulde there be founde people
of so ingrate, straunge, peruers, and waywarde
wittes, that woulde (without all good reason)
blame and improue the same, binneth yet seene,
and muche lesse read. For who be they that geue
so precipitat and heady iudgementes in al ma-
ner of matters, as suche (for the more parte) the
whiche therein shall haue leaste cognoissaunce
or knowledge, and take least payne in readyng
or searchyng the veritie of that thyng agaynst
the whiche they be mosse stoute, doughtie, and
bolde pronouncers. And this do I not say on-
lye of them, that peradventure shall here and
there in the processe of this booke fynde any
perticuler matters to reprove and carpe, some-
tymes worthylie, and sometymes otherwyle:
but also, yea, and that muche more, of them
whiche generally without all exception, shall
condemne and vtterlye reprove all the whole
matter: some alleagyng that it is shame, and
other some, that it is not meete ne syttyng
suche

The lyght
iudgementes of
many men.

Of them that vt-
terly do cōdemn
this booke.

The Prologue.

Such matters to be entreated of, so playnely in our mother and bulgar language, to the dishonour (as they say) of womanhead and the derision of theyr wont secretes, by the detection and discovering whereof, men it readyng or hearyng, shalbe moued thereby the more to abhorre and lothe the compaignye of women, and further, in theyr communications to ieste and bourde of womens priuities, not wont to be known of them, with diuers other suche lyke caullations and reasons: so that theyr opinion it is, that it were more expedient and better to suppress and bitterlye to condemne vnto darkenesse for euer this booke, then to sende it forth into lyght. Loe, suche is the light iudgemente of them, the which in euery thyng, whereof may ensue both good and euill, haue alwayes theyr eyes walkyng, and firmly assured and directed vppon the euyl, pyckyng and choosyng out the woozt of euery matter, omittynge and leauyng to speake of the beste, as the thyng whiche were nothyng to theyr purpose. If euerye thyng in this worlde shoulde be wayed and passed vppon after this sort, then shoulde we be fayne to condemne and bannysh those thynges farre from vs, whiche are at this tyme accompted and taken for the most necessary, woozthy, and of greatest price or estimation. For to be short, there is nothyng vnder heauen so good, but that it may be peruerted and turned to an euyl vse, by them that be euyl and naught them selues,

and

Answer to
certayne ca-
uillations.

Nothing so
good but it
may be a-
bused.

The Prologue.

and doo abuse it: ne is there any thyng so absolute and perfecte, but by the occasion of the abuse thereof, at one tyme or other, may and doth ensue great daunger and damage to mankynd.

Fyre and water be two right necessarie elementes to the vse of man, without the whiche we

Fyre & water abused.

coulde not lyue: yet by the meanes of them, many a miserable deed hath been done, and perpetrated. By fyre hath been consumed and deuoured whole Cities and Countreyes. By water, swallowed and drowned infinite men, shippes, yea and whole regions. Agayne, meate

Meat and drynke abused.

and drinke, to the moderate vsers thereof, dooth minister and mainteyne lyfe: And contrary, to the vnmeasurable and vnfaciat gourmaundes and gluttons, it hath full many thousand times brought surfettes, syckenesse, and at the laste death. By weapons, Realmes and Cities be defended from the iniurie and violencie of theyr

Weapons abused.

fierce enemies, the true wayfaryng man, from the assault of the theefe: Yea and many tymes cleane contrary, by weapons, Realmes and Cities be subuerted and vtterly destroyed, the true mans throate by the theefe cut. The moste holye and sacred Wyble teacheth nothyng but

The Bible abused.

holynesse and vertuous lyuyng, charitie to God and to our neyghbour, reformation of our wicked lyuyng, and breiefelye, the hygh waye to God. The blessed Sacramēt of the body & blood of Chryste Iesus was instituted and ordeined by our Sauour him selfe, for apynicipall, earnest, lyuely, and moste present consolation and com-

The blessed Sacrament may be abused.

forte

The Prologue.

Whose
iudgements can
never be in-
different.

To the good
every thyng
turneth to
good.

The condi-
tion of such
as be yll.

and comfort of mans conscience, yet both holpe
Scripture, and also the foresayde holy Sacra-
ment, haue been, be, and will be, the confusion,
and condemnation of a great number of the
abusers and indigne or unworthy receyvers of
them both. Should men, for the auoyding all
these foresayde inconueniences, and for the rea-
sons abouesayde, condemne and banyshe fyre
and water, forsake theyr meate and drynke, sup-
presse and forbyd all manner of weapons, abo-
lyshe and let asyde the holy Scripture, deny or
buregarde the blessed Sacrament? No, it were
but madnesse once to thynk it. Therefore I say,
the iudgement of that eye can neuer be equall &
indifferent, whiche hath more respecie and re-
garde alwayes to the displeasures and hurtes
possible to happen (ouely through the misuse of
a thyng) then to the emolumentes and profites
dayly and commonly lyke to ensue to the well
vlers of the same: that, that of it selfe is good, is
neuer to be disallowed for þe sake of them that do
abuse it. For as the Apostle also dooth testifye,
To them that be good them selfe, every thyng
turneth to good: what euer it be, is to them a
sufficient matter and occasyon therin to seeke
the glorie of GOD, and the only profite of their
euen Chrysten. And contrary, suche as be of
yll disposition, in every thyng (be it neuer so
good and salutarie) piketh out matter of main-
teynance to theyr lewdnesse, turnyng matters
of sadnesse and discretion, to foolyshe and pyuissh
prating contention.

Wherefore

The Prologue.

Wherefore considering that there is nothing in
this worlde so necessary, ne so good, holy, or ver-
tuous, but that it may by wickednesse be abu-
sed, it shall be no great wonder, though this li-
tle booke also, made, written, and set forth for a
good purpose, yet by lyght and lewde persons
be vbled contrary to godlynnesse, honestie, or then-
tent of the wyter thereof. The abusion of this
booke (in my simple iudgement) consisteth one-
lye in these two poyntes. The one is, least that
some yll disposed person shoulde wickedly abuse
suche medicines as be here declared for a good
purpose, to some deuyllish and lewde vse. What
I meane by the lewde vse of them, they that
haue vnderstandyng, right soone wyll perceiue.
The second poynt is, least that this booke hap-
penyng into any lyght merchauntes handes,
shoulde minister matters vnto suche, to deuylse
of these thynges at vnset and vnseemely tymes,
to the derision or ashamyng of suche women as
should be in presence. &c. To these reasons can I
make no better aunswere, then hath ben allea-
ged before. Not withstanding, yet I say that I
trust, yea, and do not doubt, but that this booke
shall be so discretely diuided abroad, that none of
them shall fall in any such persons handlyng.

Wherein this
booke may be
abused.

The seconde
poynt.

No lyght per-
sons shal haue
any of these
bookes.

Agayne, yf any doo chaunce to them, I am
sure they wyll as soone reade this Prologue,
as the rest of this booke, the which thing when
they shall doo, here shall they heare of me, that
they be in theyr doynges neyther honest, good,
ne godly, but speakyng vnreuerently, contemp-
tuously,

The Prologue.

Of foolyshe and
lewde talkers.

Some woulde
that neyther ho-
nest ne vn honest
shoulde haue this
booke.

tuously and vntymely of such thynges, they do
great iniury, dishonour, and contumely to na-
ture: For he that declareth any thyng in man
or woman, priuie or apart, talkyng and rehear-
sing it in reproche, derision, or confusion of his
euen Christen, can not be excused of mortall
and deadly sinne, for so muche as continually
he ashameth and confoundeth his euen
Christen, wherewith he bryngeth hym out of
paciencie, mouyng hym to yre, and vengeance,
in rehearsing of such thynges, and after such
sort, as he knoweth shoulde agreeue and bere
his mynde. Wherefore for such deedes, he shall
not be accounted of the number of honest and
sage persons, but of the lyght and lewde. Yet
another sort is there, which woulde that ney-
ther honest ne vn honest men shoulde see this
booke, for because (as they say) be a man neuer
so honest, yet by reading here of thynges to them
before vnknewen, they shall conceaue a cer-
tayne lothsomnes and abhorryng towards a
woman. To these I aunswere, that I knowe
nothyng in woman so priuie ne so secrete, that
they shoulde neede to care who knowe of it, ney-
ther is there any part in woman more to be ab-
horred, then in man. And if the knowledge of
such thynges which commonly be called the
womans priuities, shoulde dimynish the hartie
loue and estimation of a woman in the mynde
of man, then by this reason, Whisitationis and
Chyrurgians wiues shoulde greatly be abhorred
and misbeloued of thei husbands. And I
my

The Prologue.

my selfe lyke wyse, whiche wyrteth this booke,
shoulde marueylously aboue many other ab-
horre or loth women. But to be short, there is
no such thyng, neyther any cause thereto why.
Wherefore all such slender reasons set apart, let
no woman be greued who shall see or beholde
this booke: for yf the partie be lewde, vnhappy,
and knauysh that shall reade it, here I am sure
he shal learne neither lewdenesse, vnhappinesse,
ne knauerie. Howbeit, generally to all men, in
whose handes this booke shal chaunce to come,
I counsell and exhort, that they take not vpon
them to talke of any thinges therein conteyned,
but onely where it may edifie, and be assuredly
well accepted.

No matter who
readeth this
booke.

The exhortati-
on to all readers.

For women lyghtly wyll not gladly heare of
such matters, by any man, vnlesse it be a Phi-
sition of whom they require counsayle, or of
theyr discrete husbandes. It shall be no dis-
pleasure to any honest and louyng woman,
that her husbände shoulde reade such thynges:
for many men there be of so gentle and louyng
nature towarde thei wyues, that they wyll be
more dilygent and carefull to reade or seeke
out any thyng that shoulde doo theyr wyues
good, beyng in that case, then the women them-
selues. Briefly, I require all readers hereof, to
interpretate and construe euery thyng herein
conteyned, accordyng to the best, and to vse
euery thyng herein entreated of to the pur-
pose wherefore it was wrytten. For truly as
for

The Prologue.

The considera-
tion why this
booke was set
foorth.

This booke set
foorth in many
other langua-
ges.

for my part consydering the manyfolde, dayly,
and imminent dangers and perylls the which
all maner of women, of what estate or degree so
euer they be, in theyr labours do sustayne and
abyde, yea, many tymes with peryll of theyr lyfe
(of the which there be to many examples, neede-
lesse here to be rehearsed) I thought it shoulde
be a very charitable and laudable deede, and
ryght thankefully to be accepted of all honou-
rable and other honest matrons, yf by my
paynes this little treatise were made to speake
Englyshe, as it hath been long syth taught to
speake Dutche, frenche, Spanyshe, and dyuers
other languages. In the whiche Countreies
there be fewe women that can reade, but they
wyl haue one of these bookes alwayes in rea-
dines, where also this and other such bookes be
as commonly sold at euery Stacionars shoppe,
as any other booke. The same commoditie then
and profite which they in their regions do ob-
teyne by enioying of this lyttle booke in theyr
maternall language, may also ensue vnto all
women in this noble Realme of Englande, it
beyng lyke wyse sette foorth in our Englyshe
speeche, so that to them which diligently wyl
aduert and geue heede to the instructions of
this lyttle booke, it may supply the roome and
place of a good Mydwyfe, and aduise them ma-
ny tymes of sundry causes, chaunces, and reme-
dies, wherein peraduenture ryght wyse wo-
men and good Mydwyues shalbe full ignorant.

And

The Prologue.

And truely (as I haue been credibly enformed by diuers persons worthy to be beleued) there be syth the fyrst setting forth of this booke, right many honourable Ladyes, & other worthypfull Gentlewomen, which haue not disdayned the oftener by the occasion of this booke, to frequent and haunt women in theyr labours, carrying with them this booke in theyr handes, and causyng such part of it as doth chiefly concerne the same purpose, to be read before the Mydwyfe, and the rest of the women then being present, whereby oft tymes, then all haue ben put in remembraunce of that, wherewith the labouryng woman hath been greatly comforted, and alleuiated of her thronges and trauaile: whose laudable example and dooynges, woulde GOD that many proude Mydwyues woulde ensue and folowe, among the whiche, as there be many ryght expert, dyligent, wyse, circumspect and tender about such businesse as appertayneth to theyr office: So be there agayne many mo full vndiscreete, vnrasonable, cholerish, and farre to seeke in such thynges, the which shoulde chiefly helpe and succour the women in theyr most paynesfull labour and thronges, through whose rudenesse and rashnesse onely, I doubt not but that a great number of women in their labour speede worse then needed otherwyse. But here now let not the good Mydwyues be offended with that, that is spoken of the badde. For verily there is no science, but that it hath his Apes, Owles, Beares,

C. i.

and

How Ladyes
and Gentlewo-
men haue used
this booke.

Of Mydwyues

In every sci-
ence there be
of all sort.

*In tyme of naturs curiouse to haue
knowe of the kinred by making of
the fowle heart of hert to be good our heart*

The Prologue.

Some Wyd-
wyues woulde
haue had this
booke forbidden.

The false sar-
nises of the
maluolent.

The good
Wydwyues
were glad of
this booke.

and Asses, which as aboue all other haue most
neede of information and teaching, so most com-
monly agayne, more then any other, wyll they
kycke and wynce agaynst such as woulde them
refourme or reduce to any better way then they
haue ben accustomed to in tymes past. And this
do I say, for because that at the fyrst commyn-
g abroad of this present booke, many of this sort
of Wydwyues, moued eyther of enuie, or els of
mallice, or both, diligented and endeuoured
them very earnestly, by all wayes possible, to
fynde the meanes to suppress and abrogate the
same, makynge all women of theyr acquaint-
taunce (whom they thought to haue any know-
ledge thereof) to beleue that it was nothyng
woorth, and that it shoulde be a flander to wo-
men, forsomuche as therein was descried and
set forth the secretes and priuities of women,
and that euery boy and knaue hadde of these
bookes, readyng them as openly as the tales of
Robin hood. &c. The which sayinges, as they
were false, and vntrue, and malicious allegati-
ons onely of euyl harted persons, to whom it
was great grieve, that any by readyng thereof,
shoulde see or vnderstande more then they had
knowledge of before: So is it very soothe and
true, that ryght diuers of the better and more
sober sort, were thereof full fayne and glad, and
berye desyrus to haue of them, and gaue
faythfull counsaile also vnto women of theyr
familier knowledge, to heare the booke read by
some other, or els (suche as coulde) to reade it
them

The Prologue.

them selues. Whose honest and vertuous indu-
stry in that behalfe, as it doth merite and de-
serue the laude and prayse of all them that be
laudable them selfe: euen so is the fylthy and
byle ingratitude and dispituous enuie of the
maleuolent, to be detested and vtterly abhorred
of all people: Whose malignaunt wittes, yf
they myght preuaile of theyr purpose, woulde
sley the good courages of all honest interpre-
ters, in those matters and all other. And

Envy and un-
thankfulness to
be abhorred.

thus I conclude and make an ende

of this rude Prologue, requi-

ring the gentle readers

therof, that yf they

shall fynde any

thing ther-

in inter-

pretable to diuers senses, to ac-

cept onely that which may

make to the best, accor-

ding to my mea-

nyng.

C. ii.

The first booke.

In this first Chapter is briefly
declared the contentes of the
fyrst booke.



The vntitie of
the fyrst booke

Although that many thinges entreated of in this first booke, shal seeme vnto some not very necessary to the vnderstandyng of the seconde booke, yet then contrary do I ensue and certifie (as I haue sufficiently sayd in the Prologue) that the ignorant in the fyrst, shalbe full blynde in the seconde, to the which the first is as a key, opening and clearing the matters to be intreated of in the seconde.

The contentes
of this booke.

In this first booke then shalbe declared the fourme, maner, and situation of the inwarde partes of a woman, suche as are in them by nature dedicate and assigned to the propagation, conception, and bearyng of mankinde. In who truely is the receptacle, & as ye woulde say, the campe or felde of mankynde to be engendred therein. And although
that

that man be as principall moouer and
cause of the generation: yet (no displea-
sure to men) the woman doth conferre
and contribute muche more, what to
the encrease of the chylde in her
wombe, and what to the nourishment
thereof after the byrth, then doth the
man. And doubtlesse, yf a man woulde
demaunde to whom the chylde oweth
most his generation: He may worthily
make aunswere, that to the mother,
whether ye regarde the paynes in bea-
ryng, other els the conference of most
matter in begetting.

The woman
conferreth more
the generation
then man.

Furthermore, in this booke ye shall
reade certayne thyngs, which in times
passed haue ben corruptly, negligently,
yea and very falsely wrytten of, and of
the which both men, yea and women
them selues, haue conceived very erro-
nious and misopinions, as ye shall far-
ther perceiue in the procelle.

Many thynges
falsely wrytten
in times past.

Now therefore that we come to the
declaration of the Organs generatiue
in womā, it shalbe necessary to the bet-

The first booke.

ter vnderstanding therof, fyrst to shew
the Description of certayne thynges,
without whose knowledge, this trea-
tise would be many times the more ob-
scure and darke.

In howe many coates the body is
lapped or inuolued. Cap. ii.

The principall
coates of the
body.



The body of man or wo-
man is inuolued or com-
passed vniuersally with
three principal coates.

Of the whiche the fyrst
and vtermost is called the skynne, in
Latine Cutis, with whom generally
euery part of the body is clad and inclo-
sed, the which yet in some part is more
softe, delycate, and thinne, then in some
other, and in some one person more
stowre and styffe, then in some other a-
gayne, for causes needelesse here to be
rehearsed.

The superficial
skynne.

And ye shall note, that vpon the out-
warde face and superficie of this skyn,
there is yet another thinner skynne, in
Latine

Latine commonly named Cuticula, & of
 some Efflorescentia cutis. This thyn skyn
 is it, the which ye see rise lyke a bladder
 when any part of the body is blistered
 with fire or hot water, so that betwene
 this thynne skin and the very skinne, is
 contained the water which resorteth to
 the place by the violence of the fyre or
 heate, the which thyn skin also we vse to
 pricke to let the water issue forth: also
 the same that skaleth or pylleth of the
 hands or other parts of the body being
 scabbed & begynnyng to dry. Item, the
 skin that the Adders do cast in the som-
 mer tyme, is the foresayd thyn superfici-
 all skin, & not the very substantiall skin
 of the body in deede. For the very skin
 neuer pylleth ne falleth of but by great
 violence, as by flaying, like as beastes be
 flaine at the butchers, & as they flay co-
 nies. And againe the thyn or superficial
 skin, skale it or fal it of neuer so often, yet
 in the place of it is reingendred new, as
 good alwayes as the former. But yf
 the second and very skin be perished, by

The very skin
 skaleth not of.

The first booke.

The very skyn
perished is ne-
uer restored.

cutting or apostumation, or by other casualtie, it wyl neuer be restored to his olde perfection agayne, but shall shewe alwayes in the place where it is, as it were a seame, skarre, or marke, smoth, and harder then the other skynne, and without naturall powers.

The seconde
coate.

The fleshy skin.

The seconde inuestiture or clothynge of the body, is named the fleshy skyn, in Latin Membrana carnosā, so called, for because that it conteyneth and is composed of fleshynges, then any other kelle or skyn in all the body, & is as it were the lynnyng to the fore sayd Cutis, that is, the very skyn immediatly aboue hym, the very skin and it being both basted together, by a great number of smal fybres or cords enterlacing these two skynnes, so that with great payne vnneth may they be separated the one frō the other. And farther, betweene these two skins runne a great number of baynes, artires, and sinnes, in euery part of the body, so that the great baynes whiche appeare so manifestly to your syght in
the

the armes, temples, handes, legges, feete, and other places, runne betweene the proper skinne and the fleshy skinne, this being to them as a bedde, and that as a couerlet.

The thyrde coate of the body, is the fatte, in Latin Adeps, the whiche doth so generally in euery part of the body inuolue & wrap the same, as the other two coates: but yet the man or woman being in any reasonable lykynge, it is founde in euery part (except fewe) as the forehead, the temples, the backes of the handes and feete, with certayne other places nedeleffe here to be resited, and doth entercurre & runne betweene the two foresayd skynnes, receyuyng & embracyng in it selfe the small bastynge fibres, the vaynes, artires, and sinnes, which (as I sayd before) be deriued from the one skin to the other: And the greater foyson of fat that there is betweene the two skynnes, the lesse be the vaines intercurryng betweene them, conspicuous or sensible to the eye (thabundance of

The thirde
coate, is the
fatte.

Store of fatte
letteth the shew
of the vaynes.

The first booke.

Fatte in some
part, more then
some.

of fat drownyng & coueryng the great-
nes of them) the which also in the selfe
same place of a leaner or sparer person,
shalbe seene very great, and as it were
swollen baynes, in comparison of the
fatter. Itē, vnderstand ye that in some
part of the body, naturally fatnes doth
abound much more then in other some,
as in the belly lyghtly the fatte is two
fyngers thicke & more: and in women
that be meanelly fat, in the thyres & but-
tockes this fatte is of thre, yea foure
fyngers thynknes, which (as I sayd a-
boue) always hath his place betweene
the foresayd two skynnes.

What is con-
teyned next vnder
the fleshy
skynne.

Now immediatly vnder the fleshy
skin, be conteyned the Muscles of the
body, so that the inner face or superficie
of the fleshy skin, wherwith it toucheth
the muscles, is alwaies bedewed with
a certayne slimy moysture, by whiche
meanes the foresayd Muscles moving
and stirring vnder the sayd fleshy skin,
be the freer, & haue the lesse impedimēt
or let in theyr motion, & very easie it is
to

to seperate this skin frō the Muskles.

Here is declared what the
Muskles be. Cap. iiii.



he muscles of mans body that is meant
by the name of
Muskles.
be called the moouing cor-
des and fleshye strynges

whereby any member of
the body is mooued to or
fro, vpward or downeward, or turned
rounde. As for example. If ye close, or
otherwise do moue either of your han-
des, and in closyng or moouyng it with
the other hande doo feelee the Wryste of
that hande, ye shall sensibly perceyue
as it were certayne cordes moouing vn-
der the skynne, the whiche be called
Muskles, in latine Musculi. To discusse
curiously the nature or occasyon of the
name of Muskles, is not for this place.
Here is it sufficient to vnderstand what
is meant by the name. Yet note ye
well, that wheresoeuer there is great
store of Muskles, and chiefly in the
myddle parte of them, there is al-
so great plentye of fleshe, enter-
lardyng

The first booke.

The Muskles
entermingled
with fleshe.

lardyng & entermynglyng it selfe with the Muskles, & as it were combining, colligatyng, or knittynge together the Muskles, not so yet, but that neuertheless they haue theyr free motion.

All other places of the body left apart and vnmencioned of, here wyll I onely declare a litle of the Muskles of the belly, forasmuch as theyr operation is sometymes conferent and appertayning to the matters that we entend of.

The Muskles
of the belly.

Ouer the amplitude of the belly, next vnder the fleshy kel or skin, be.iiii. Muskles, eche situate and set vnder other, of the whiche, the vppermost immediately touchyng the fleshy skyn, be called the Byaswyle descendyng Muskles, in Latin Musculi obliqui descendentes. Of these Muskles there be two, in each syde of the belly one, so that these two Byaswyle descendyng Muskles meete together in the middle region of the belly, & be extended or spread ouer al the amplitude of the belly, shapynge thereto as it were an other coate.

The

The second Muskles be named the byaswyle ascendyng Muskles, in Latin, Musculi obliqui ascendentes, whose being is immediatly next vnder the inner face of the first Muskles. Of these also as of the first, in ech syde or coast of the belly is there one.

The third sort of the belly Muskles, as they be situate in order, the one vnder the other, be called the ryght Muskles, in latin, Musculi recti, which be double as the other two before.

The ryght Muskles.

The fourth be nominated the ouerthwart Muskles, in Latin, Musculi transuersi, because they transuerse or ouerthwart the belly. In ech side likewise of whom, ther is one of these Muskles, which in the middle line of the belly encounter eche other, as I haue sayde of the aboue named three Muskles, so that the byaswyle ascendyng, and the byaswyle descendyng, with the ouerthwart Muskles, do ech of them couer and compasse all the whole breadth of the belly, but so do not the ryght Muskles,

The ouerthwart Muskles.

The first booke.

The vse of the
foure belly
Muscles.

kles, for the breadth of them is but small in comparison of the other. All these foure Muscles be to the entrailes and bowels within the belly, as foure seuerall coates, by the vertue and helpe of whom, together with the ayde of the midriffe, al expulsion both vpward and downeward in the guttes, in the stomacke, in the matrix of the woman in the tyme of labour, and also in the bladder in tyme of making of water, is wrought, and yet besydes this vtilitie, they clothe (as I haue sayde) defende, fortifie, & strength the inwards of the belly.

Of the Kell, called Peritoneum.

Capit. iiii.



nder the last Muskle of the belly, called the ouerthwarte Muskle, immediatly succeedeth a certayne thin rinde, kel, or skin, named in latin, Peritoneum, whiche compasseth rounde the amplitude and

The Peritoneum and his office.

and largeour of the belly, takyng his originall at the bynders of the loyne bones, and from thence dilatynge and spreadyng it selfe abroade, vnderlyneth the ouerthwart Muskles, the midriffe, & part of the short ribbes. To be short, this rime vnderlineth all the whole cavitie, holonesse, or amplitude of the bellye, from the midriffe to the flankes or share, immediatly contaynyng and inuoluing in it selfe all the whole contentes of the belly, even as the skin next vnder the shell of an egge enuironeth and compasseth immediatly all the contayned meate of an egge. And as for Peritoneum, doth not only enuolue all the entrayles of the belly in his compasse, but also yeeldeth vnto eche entrayle a coate and webbe of the cloth of his owne bodie, by the which his liuery, they be the more arctly & straightly affixed or fastened vnto him selfe, and farther in themselves the stronger within the cavitie of the belly: and vnder this Peritoneum, be contayned these bowels folowynge.

First

The use and
profite of the
Peritoneum.

The first booke.

Bowles contel-
ued vnder the
Peritoneum.

First the stomacke, which is the first receptacle and receiuer of the foode or meate chewed and mashed before in the mouth, from thence Descendynge ouer the Winde pype, downe along the stomacke gut, and so consequently into the stomacke, then the Kell, in Latin Omentum, the liuer, the spleene or melt, the bladder, & the matrix, then yet the guttes, vnder the guttes the kydnes, the maister vayne, and the maister arterie. But here we shal begin first to entreate of the matrix, as the part which maketh chiefly to our purpose.

The declaration of the names
and nature of the Matrix.

Capit. v.

Diuers names
of the Matrix.

BEre ye shall vnderstand, that these thre words, the Matrix, the Mother, and the wombe, do signifie but one thing, that is to say, The place wherein the seede of man is conceived, fetified, conserued, nourished, & augmented, vnto the time
of

of Deliueraunce, in Latin named Vterus & Matrix. The necke of thys wombe, o-
therwyse called the womans priuie,
we wyll call the wombe passage, or the
priuie passage: in Latin Ceruex vteri, & pu-
dendum muliebre: the extreme end, or y^e fyrst
entraunce of this priuie or wombe pas-
sage, ye shall name the passage port: for
because that it is the port gate, or en-
traunce of that passage, or way into the
wombe or matrix: in Latin. Vulua. i. Valua.

The wombe passage, the or the necke
of the wombe, taketh his beginning at
the passage porte, and from thence sty-
eth and mounteth ryght vpwarde vn-
der the sharebone like a great conduit,
varying in length & bredth accordinge
to the age of the woman.

The necke of
the Matrix.

To make especyall mentyon of the
length of this wombe passage, were but
follye, for the diuersities thereof. Not-
withstandynge in women it is esteemed
of the length of. x. xi. xii. or xiii. fingers
bredth, some more, some lesse. And thys
we maye saye that nature hath so pro-

The fyrst booke.

wydded that it is of sufficient length, to receaue the priuie part of manne, in the generation, directinge the same towar- des the wombe port, thow the which the seede is naturally sent from the man into the wombe or mother, thereto hel- ping an attractife power, which is in- set and geuen to the wombe, to attracte and drawe towarde it selfe the seede parted from the man (so that there bee no other let.)

Of the wombe and his partes. Capi. vi.



The wombe or
Matrix in wo-
men not with
childe contracte.

In the head or vpper ende of this wombe passage, is sytu- ate the wombe it selfe, which in women (beyng not with childe) is verelyttle, contract and drawen together: so that the amplitude or largenes therof, passeth not the amply- tude and largenes of the priuie passage, the which thing to some may seme vn- credible, yet by Anathomy ye may see it to

to be true. And for all this contraction, or drawing so nere together of the Matrix, the outsyde of it is very smoothe, moyst, glysteryng, and reddyshe, as it were a little redde tempered with a great deale of whyte, the insyde also of the Matrix is smoothe: yea, & though that the Matrix, as we haue said, be ful of riuels & wrinkles, by the reason that it is so contract frō a great amplitude or largenes (as may be seen in the wombe or Matrix of women with chylde) to this little compasse, yet may a boddy scarfe perceiue in this inner side any wrinkle, (albeit that there be infinite) they be so finely and neere drawn togeather.

This contraction of the Matrix, no doubt, was made by nature, for these causes, partely that at suche tyme that the woman is not with chylde, it should occupye the lesse roome in the bellye: but chyeslye that in tyme of conception of the seede, the lyttle bolke or quantitie of the sayde seede, at hys fyrst conceauynge into the womans

The cause of
the contraction
of the Matrix.

D.ii.

Mother

The first booke.

Mother, may be touched rounde about
euery where of the mother: and as ye
woulde say, amplexed or embraced, and
contayned (as the nut shell contayneth
immediatly the nut) of the inner walles
or face of the matrix: and as the seede is
vniued, shaped, and doeth encrease, so
doeth the amplitude of the matrix en-
large and waxe bygger: so that at the
last when the infant cometh to his full
groweth, or when the woman is great
with chylde: then this coate or kelle of
the Matrix is as thynne as a bladder,
where that in tyme of his contraction,
or when the woman is not with chylde,
the coate or walle of the Matrix is as
good as halfe an inch thicke.

Nowe the Ma-
trix sheweth the
thicknes and
thynnes of his
coate.

The founde of
the Matrix.

Nowe ye shall vnderstande, that the
founde or botome of the matrix is not
perfectly round bowllwyse, but rather
lyke the forme of a mans harte, as it is
paynted, sauinge that the partition or
clifte in the matrix betwene both cor-
ners, the ryght and the lefte, is not so
profoundlye dented inwarde as the
clifte

clyfte in the harte : For in the inwarde
 vault, cauitie, or holonesse of the ma-
 trix, there is a certayne seame, whiche
 begynnyng in the middle of the fore-
 part of the matrix, at the wombe port,
 doth passe forth by that foreside, & so by
 the bottome to the hynder syde of the
 matrix, & from thence along downe to
 the wombe port on the backsyde, as ye
 may more evidently see in the figure
 hereof. This seame then is as it were a
 litle seperation, marke, or limit, diui-
 dyng the wombe in two equall partes
 or sydes, the ryght and the lefte : Not-
 withstandyng, in the matrix there is
 but one vault, cauitie, holonesse, or am-
 plitude, the forsayde seame beyng but
 as it were a note, signe, or scace sensi-
 ble marke running along the sydes and
 botome of the wombe. But this seame
 or line where it passeth the bottome of
 the mother or wombe, is more crasse,
 thicke, and fleshye, propendyng, hel-
 ding, hangyng, or lokyng downeward
 into the vaulte or amplitude of the

A certayne
 seame deuidyng
 the Matrix as
 it were in two
 partes.

In the Matrix
 but one holo-
 nesse.

The first booke.

Wombe, the whiche lyne in the sydes is
nothyng so manyfeste ne sensible to be
perceyued. Thus ye may see, that the
myddle part of the bottome of the Ma-
trix, is not so hye as the two comers or
angles on both sydes be. Other distinc-
tiones or separations in the Matrix is
there none, albeit that in tymes passed,
diuers Clarkes haue wrytten, & many
other haue beleued, that there should
be seuen selles, or seuen distinct places in
the matrix, in thre of the which on the
ryght syde, shoulde onely men chyldren
be conceaued, and in the other thre on
the left syde women chyldren: and yf it
chaunced that the seede were conceiued
in the seuenth sell, which was the mid-
delmoste, then that shoulde become a
monster, halfe a man & halfe a woman.
The which al is but lyes, dreames, and
sonde fantasies. For the womans ma-
trix, as I haue said, is euen as a strong
bladder, haryng in it but one vniuersal
holoneste, and the chyld when it lyeth
in it, lyeth euer on the one syde more
then

Certaine
erronious opini-
ons of vll.
selles in the
wombe.

then on the other, the head being so-
wardes one of the corners or angles, &
not vpright toward the middle bridge

The matrix
hath but one
holmes.

Of the mother port.

Cap. vi.



The entrance
of the matrix
or wombe, is
named the
womb port or
mother port,
the whiche in
substaunce &
fassion muche
doth resemble

Of the mother
port, the situa-
tion thereof.

the foume of an haukes bel, or other li-
tle moyses bels, sauing that it is muche
bigger, having a clift ouerthwart the
body thereof, as ye may more playnly
perceiue by the figure hereof. And this
port of the matrix is of substaunce more
thicke & crasse then the rest of the same,
& as it were a kernel, round & clift in the
middest. This womb port also is faste-
ned & affixed to the vpper end of y^e wombi
passage, as all the rest of the wombe is.

Diui

How

The first booke.

Howe be it, the middle parte of the wombe port, or the snout therof, where it bosseth downward, doth touche no side nor part of the wombe passage, but onely holdeth pendante wyse, or loketh downward: and where as at suche tyme that the man companyeth with the woman, the priue passage is dilated & opened to the quantitie of mans priue part, yet notwithstanding, the mouth of the clyft of the wombe port is not moued thereby, ne dilated: excepte that it be at suche tyme that the matrix beyng apt and disposed thereto, and other conditions requisite, this wombe port do naturallye open it selfe, attractyng, drawyng, and suckyng into the wombe the seede, by a vehement and naturall desyre.

The womb
wel disposed
naturally
attracteth the
seede.

Notwithstanding, when the seede is conceaued in at this wombe port, it doth not alwayes remayne there, but many tymes issueth out agayne for some indisposition founde other in the place or in the seede it selfe. Albeit yf the seede be retay-

retayned styll in the matrix, then doeth the wombe port close it selfe so fast and so firmly, that the poynt of a nedle can not enter in thereat without violence, and so doth remayne vntyl the tyme of deliuerance, at what tyme agayne it dilateth and openeth it self, in such am-
 plitude and largenesse, that it is won-
 derfull to speake of.

The closnes of
 the matrix after
 the seede con-
 ceaued.

Of the vessels of seede, called the
 stones, with other therto appertayning.
 Cap. viii.



If eche syde of the matrix
 lieth a stone, which both be
 called the womans stones,
 wherein is ingendred the
 seede & sparme that com-
 meth from the woman, not so stronge,
 firme, and mightie in operation as the
 seede of man, but rather weake, fluy,
 colde, and moyste, and of no great fir-
 mitie: howbeit, as conuenient and
 proper for the purpose for the whiche it
 was ordeyned, as the seede of man for
 his

The first booke.

his purpose. These stones be nothing so bygge as the stones of man, but lesse, flatter, muche fashioned after the shape of a greate and brode almond. The substance and bodye of these stones is not made massyfe, or compact and softe, as mens stones be, but as it were many litle kernelles sette together, betweene the which is much holonesse, and there in conteyned a certayne thynne watery substance. This substance of the stones is inuolued & wrapped with a coate or thynne skynne, very firmly annexed to the foresayde substance, which also doth receiue into hym selfe the seede bryngers. We may name the same coate in Latin *Supergeminalis*.

Of the seede bryngers. Cap. ix.

Of the seede
bryngers.



The seede bryngers, called in Latin *Vasa semē adferentia*, be two vaynes & two artires, whiche come to these two stones, to eche one vaine & one artire, and take theyr beginning

nyng on this wyse.

Under the guttes (as ye may see in the figures hereof) be situate the great maister vayne, in Latine Caua Vena, and the great artire, Arteria magna. The original of the great vaynt The maister vayne hath his originall of the lyuer, from whence it descendeth downeward along the loynes, vntyll it attayne vnto the begynnyng of Os sacrum, where the artire (as the Worthyer) begynneth to mount vppon the maister vayne, and in this place they both diuide them selues in two partes forke wyse, the ryght part of the forke proceeding into the right thygh and legge, the lefte, into the lefte legge, the vayne euermore associate with the artire, the whiche hath his beginnyng of the hart, from whence he is descended through the midryffe to this place, distributing to all places whereby he passeth artires.

The office of the great vayne is, to conduct and cary from the liuer (which The office of the vaynes. is the blood shoppe, where the blood is engendred)

The first booke.

engendred) to all partes of the bodye blood, therewith to nozyshe them. For to the great vayne where they passe, there commeth innumerable smal vaynes on euery syde, euen as to the great riuers many small streames on euery syde do resort.

The office of
the artires.

The office of the artires is, to spreade abroad in the body the vitall and lyue-lye spyrte, engendred in the bosome of the harte, and to refreshe and temper the inmoderate heate whiche otherwyse mought be ingendred in the bodye, the whiche also sleape we or wake we, do continuallye moue and beate, therefore the motion of them is called the pulse, and loke after what manner the hart (whiche is the well of these artires) doeth moue or stirre it selfe, and euen so do they.

The hart and
artires haue
two contrary
motions.

The hart then, and the artires thorow him, haue two contrary motions: one is, in closyng it selfe, and the other, in dilatynge and openynge of it selfe, whiche sorte of mouynges, we call the beatyng.

beating of the pulces, when the artires do open themselves, then they attract, draw, or suck in fresh ayre, to temper the heate of the body withall, and also spirituall and thin pure blood. But when they close themselves, then do they expel misty fumes, and hotte breathes, or vnaturall vapours, such as of necessity alwayes be ingendred in all partes of the body, by the whiche blood doeth passe, for causes to long here to be alleaged: nether is there any notable vayne vnassociate of an artyre.

Nowe on the right side and forepart of the great vaine proceedeth a braunch, deriued from that place a longe the loines downewardes to the head of the ryghte stone: from the ryghte syde lyke wyse and foreface of the great artyre, descendeth a braunche thwarting ouer the great vayne downe towardes the right loynes, where it meting with the foresayde vayne braunche, before they emplant themselves in the head of the stone, become both as one bodye, here strayght

The meeting of
the vayne and
artyre.

The fyrst booke.

strayght enlarging themselfe, lytle and lytle, stepel wyse, not fully rounde, but flatty she before and behynde, with the broder ende plantynge & infixing themselfe into the head of the ryght stone.

And at the vpper and smaller ende where this bayne braunche and artyze braunch do fyrst meete, they begynne to entermyngle, embrayde, and enterlade eche other in suche infinite wyse, wythynge & deuindinge themselves in thousandes of lytle braunches, as it were hayres of the head, the one embrasyng, compassynge and ouerthwharting the other so confusedly, that no wyt can expresse the ryghte maner and order of their commixtion. Cal this part then in Englysh, the braded body, in Latin Vari-
cosoformem plexum: Whose nether and broder ende, as I sayde before, affixed and implanted in the vpper head of the right stone, sendeth forth braunches and armes into the bodye of the same stone, manyfolde wyse dyspersed, spred, and commyxt.

The braded
body.

And

And also into the skyn or couer of the stone, called before Supergeminalis, from the sayd braded bodye, be there deriued manye small braunches, muche lyke vnto the lyttle small baynes whiche ye see reddish in a mans eye.

And looke what description and pro-
cesse, we haue made of the ryghte syde
seede bringers, to the ryght stone, euen
the same vnderstande of the lefte syde
seede bringers to the left stone, sauynge
that the bayne braunche whiche com-
meth to the left stone, mooste commonly
taketh his original of the nether side of
the left kidney bayne, and not immedi-
atly of the great bayne as the other.

And ye shal vnderstand agayne, that
from the foresaid vaine & artire of eche
syde at the place, where they first con-
iunction or meting is, proceedeth a cer-
tayne braunche of the bayne, assosiate
with the artyre, which both passe forth
together to the found or bottome of the
Mother or Matrix, of that syde where
they stande, there delatyng and sprea-
dyng

Baynes deriued
to the botom of
the Matrix.

The fyfth booke.

Dynge themfelfe abroade in manyfolde
fmaller bzanches, to the nouryfhment
of the body of the matrix.

Of the offyce and vfe of thefe feede
bryngers. Capit. x.

The feede pro-
create of the
vayne blood
and the artift.
all blood.

Through thefe feede bryngers,
blood out of the vaynes, and
liuely fpirit out of the actives
be deryued, yea, or rather (to
fpeake moze properlye) attract or dra-
wen into the ftones, there by vertue and
natural inftinction of the place altered
and chaunged, beyng fyrft confused to-
gether the blood and the fpirite, by mu-
tuall amplexations or embracements
of thefe two vefselles, the vayne and the
artyre beyng conioyned and vnite in
one very body, fyrft begynnynge in the
bradyd body, and the after in the whole
bodye of the ftone: So that thorowe
the manyfolde and infinite circulaty-
ons of the attracted matter by the con-
duyctes or vaynes infinitely intricate
and

and Wrythed With a thousand reuolu-
tions or turagaynes (and all in the litle
compasse of the body of the stones) the
blood and spirite conuired togeather,
getteth another nature and propertie
both in colour and in effect.

And here ye shall vnderstande, that
most commonly alwayes when that
nature is disposed to make a transmu-
tation of any matter, that can she not
do, vnlesse she haue a mine, shoppe, or
workehouse, wherein by continual cir-
culatiō of the matter transmutable, she
may bryng her purpose to passe. Euen
as mettalles and other minerals of the
earth, haue theyr secrete and vnuisible
baynes, in whiche by dayly and long
coagitation, mouyng, circulation, and
hurling together, they be brought from
one forme to another, & made metals
of that which before was none.

Note the ingin
and policie of
nature.

Of these sort of mines, there be foure
principall in the body of man.

Foure mines in
mans body.

The first is the mine of blood, which is
the lyuer, in whom the iuyce of meate,

E. i. before

The first booke.

before of colour Whyte, is transmuted into red, made apt and fitte to nourishe all partes of the body, attract and drawen out of the stomacke and guttes, thoroowe very small and infinite lytle baynes into the lyuer.

The hart is the
seconde mine.

The second mine is the hart, which of the blood attract and drawen from the great maister bayne, procedyng out of the foresayde lyuer, into his parlours, doth engender vehement & liuely spirite, commixed with depured & greatly elaborated blood, within the selles of the hart, from thence sent forth thoroow the artires, into all partes of the body, being in colour yealowyshe, thynne and hotte blood.

The brayne the
thyrde mine.

The thyrde mine is the brayne, of whom all the sinewes take their originall. In whom the wyttie spirite, the spirites of mouyng, and the spirites of all sensibilitie be engendred, and thoroow the sinewes sent to all partes of the bodye. For all such partes as moue and feele, haue that by reason of sinewes deriued

riued vnto those places from the head.

The fourth mine is the stones, in whō
by conuersion of al the other thre fore-
said metalles of the body, that is to say,
vayne blood, arteriall blood, and liuely
spirits engendred in the head, is engen-
dred & produced seede, which bestowed
in his due place, becommeth like a per-
fection to the creature from whence it
came, that is to say, of mankind, man.

The fourth
mine is the
stones.

But ye shall vnderstand, that the re-
ceyuyng of the seede into the stones, is
not that there should be any one onely
caue, holownesse, sell, vaulte, or parler
in the body of the stone, wherein it
myght be receyued and retayned, lyke
as the holownes of an egge, the meate
beyng out of it, or of an hasell nutte, the
kernell out of it, but farre other wyse:
for the stones (chiefly in man more then
in woman) be massife, not hard, but di-
licate & soft, as a soft kernell, full of smal
and almost vnsensible whyte vaynes,
reuoluing them selfe in and out a thou-
sand folde, and manifolde wise intricat

How the seede
is receyued into
the stones.

E. ij.

toge-

The first booke.

together, within the which the seede is conueyed, carped, concocted, or digested and altered, by vertue of the white flesh, which intercurrenth and interminglith it selfe euery where betweene the foresayd vaine, like as the earth doth intercurrenth and intermingle it selfe betweene and among the small fibres, beades, or heares of rootes. The whyte coate also or walles of the said vaynes, helping not a lytle to the transmutation of the colour from red to whyte.

Howe the
coloure of the
seede is trans-
muted.

For euery thing that is liquid, as the seede is, receyueth alwayes a nature of the place, mine, or conduite, by which it runneth and passeth, so that when the conduite is very smal and narrowe, and long withal, then the liquour that passeth through it, receyueth & sauoureth so much the more the nature and condition of that vessell or conduite. As for an example: If there were a conduite or pipe made of lead, whose length were ten foote, and the inner compasse, holonesse, or cavitie of the same, but so much
that

Liquid thinges
saue the
nature of the
vessel thorow
which it run-
neth.

that an heere myght passe through it :
then say I, that a gallō or quart of wa-
ter passing and thrillyng through that
narowe conduite shoulde saour much
more of the nature and qualitie of lead,
then though the holownesse of the a-
foresayde conduite, beyng styll of the
abouenamed length, were so large that
a bowle myght enter and passe thorow
the same. For this reason, that when
the water hath to passe thorowe so na-
row passage, it maketh y longer iour-
ney, and yeeldeth the smaller thread or
streen, & therefore is touched more im-
mediatly and intyrelly of the insydes or
inner walles of the conduite. And fur-
ther, well ye wote that a lytle quantitie
is sooner ouercome and altered, then a
great. As a spoone full of wine standing
all nyght in a pewter or brasen pot, shal
saour muche more of the pottle, then a
pynte of the same. Likewyse, yf a man
woulde coole hot drynke by pouryng
of it out of one pot or cup into another,
sooner and more perfectly shall the cir-

A lytle quantity
sooner ouercome
then a greater.

The first booke.

The pollicie of
nature.

The transmuta-
tion of blood
into sparrie.

cumstant colde ayre alter and coole it,
beyng poured out very softly, makynge
therof a fine and smal streene, then yf he
dyd the same hastely. And truly this
engine and pollicie doth nature vse in
euery part where she causeth any nota-
ble transmutation, makynge the matter
transmutable to passe through long
straighes & narrow turagayne lanes,
the matter bowyng, enclynyng, and
aptyng it selfe alwayes to the dispositi-
on and nature of the vesselles thorow
which it cooleth or runneth, so that the
sparrie or seede of man or woman, being
attracted by the foresaid seede bringers
into the stones, passeth by many narrow
straighes, which beyng before bayne
blood and artire blood, by vertue of the
places through which it had to passe,
becommeth from red colour to whyte,
& of much more perfection then it was
before. For this transmutation of blood
into sparrie, is not only in colours, but
also in properties and absolute perfecti-
on. What greater wonder or miracle is
there,

there, wherein we may knowledg and beholde the omnipotencie of God, then to consyder how that of the meate and drynkk which we dayly do eate, by digestiō first of the stomacke, the fine iuice therof is seperated from the drosse and grosser part: & then after at the seconde hande, the foresayde iuice passyng thorow the guttes, attract and drawen into the lyuer thorowe infinite smal vaynes, there transmuted into blood, from the lyuer sent into the great maister bayne, from the which the hart drawyng part, transmuteth certayne therof into Artire blood. Agayne, the stones drawyng other part, maketh thereof & of the artire blood, whorled, circulate, and coagitate together, sparrie: which sparrie bestowbed and conceived where it should be, becommeth mankynd.

How meate and drynke is transmuted into blood.

This foresaid feede, as we said before, is nothyng so firme, perfect, absolute & mightie in woman as in man, & yet can you not call this any imperfection or lacke in woman: for the woman in her

The seede in woman, not so firme as in man
as in man
as in man
as in man

The first booke.

kind, and for the office & purpose wherefore she was made, is euen as absolute and perfect as man in his kynd, neither is woman to be called (as some do) vnperfecter then man (for because that man is more myghtier and strong, the woman weaker & more feeble.) For by this reason, the Horse, the Lion, the Elephant, Camell, & many other beastes, should be called more perfect then man, to the whiche man is not able to compare in naturall myght and strength.

But truely, compar yng one man to another, suche as be gelded & want the genitories, be much feebler, weake, & effeminate, then other: in voyce womanlyke, in gesture & condition nice, in softnes of skin and plumpnes of the body fatter and rounder, in strength & force impotent, nothing manly ne bolde, the which imbecilitie in them, may well be named imperfection. For imperfection is, when that any perticuler creature doth lacke any propertie, instrument, or qualitie which commonly by nature is

Altho be vnperfecter the one then the other.

is in all other, or the more part of that kynd, comparing it to other of the same kynd, and not of an other kynd.

Thus we haue sufficiently talked of the seede bryngers & stones, with theyr offices. Now shall I declare what becomnieth of the seede beyng thus engendred, and whyther it is conueyed.

Of the way by the which the seede is sent from the stones to the Angles and corners of the Matrix. Cap. xi.



At the lower end and foote or base of the braded body, where it is infixed and planted into the head of the stone, on the backe syde halfe of the stone

ther is the begynnynge of another vessel, whiche may be called the seede caryer, in Latine Vas semen deferens, whose body is whyte and hardyth, like an harde sinew. And from that part where it taketh his begynnynge, it passeth

*Of the seede
caryers.*

The first booke.

seth downewardes to the syde of the stone, hoopyng and compassyng along the syde therof (as ye may more expressely perceiue in the figure hereof) tyll it come to the lower ende or base of the stone, from thence agayne resting or remountyng bywarde, creeping along the other syde of the same stone, tyll it come & attayne in maner to the middle region of the stone on that side, all the way as it creepeth, firmly fastned and affixed to the body of the stones, as the eye braunches do fasten them selues to the walles, by which they creepe.

The belly and inner syde of the foresaid seede carrier, wherby it cleaueth to the outsyde or face of the stone, beyng flattysh, the backe or outer syde therof roundyshe and smothe: from the beginning and head of this vessell, to this later ende, in maner of equal corpulencie or bygnesse, but infinitely wreathed as an adder or yeele whē they slide fast or hastily, make of theyr long bodyes many halfe hoopes, halfe circles, or wreathes.

Wreathes nere ioyned together: howbeit, these Wreathes be not so frequent and thicke in the woman as in the man. Therefore this part of the seede caryers may be called the Worme, in Latin, *Corpus lumbricosū*, for because that it hath many conuolutions, as Wormes lying together haue.

Of the part called the worme.

And if ye be disposed to seperate this forenamed Worme from the face of the stone with a sharpe knyfe, ye shall perceyue no maner of holonelle or cavitie of vaine or other cōduite: but as it were a ruggednesse, by reason of separation from the partie to whom it was before so surely annexed. And yet no doubt, there is verily in it cavitie and holownesse, by and thorowe the which seede is caried into the angles of the Matrix. Nowe then when this foresayd Wormie body hath attayned to the myddle region (as it were) of the stone, it beginneth to depart from the bodye of the stone, and is no more (as it was before) thicke

The first booke.

thicke wreathed, but playne, smothe, & round like a round sinew, With an vn-
sensible holoneste, departyng from the
stone along the inside of the belly ouer-
thwarting the guttes, to the angle or
corner of the Matrix, on the ryght syde
thercof (yf it proceede from the ryght
stone) and on the left syde (if it come fro
the left stone) and that not strayght or
forthryght, but somewhat bowyng &
crooking it selfe in two or three crookes
by the way. These seede carvers recey-
ueth the seede conficted, concocted, and
digested in the stones and foresaid seede
bryngers, conueying and directyng the
same from the stones to the insyde of
the corners of the Matrix, so that they
whiche do open dead women, shall al-
wayes perceiue in the holownes of the
Matrix these two angles or corners
specially bedeaured or imbued with a
whyte slimy and thynne cleare mat-
ter, whiche no doubt is the womans
seede. And in women hauyng great
and

and feruent desire to any man, this seede
doth issue from this foresayde place,
downe along to the womans priuy pas-
sage, moystring al that part, as it were
with a dewe. Aristotle and other mo,
do suppose that this seede in woman,
serueth for no other purpose, but onely
to recite, moue, and styre the woman
to pleasure. But some peradventure
would thinke that this were but a sim-
ple & an idle or slender purpose, which if
they dyd more nerely consider the mat-
ter, should perceiue it to be a iust, great,
and necessary cause. For if that the god
of Nature had not instincted, and inset
in the body of man and woman, such a
vehement and ardent appetite & lust,
the one lawfully to company with the
other, neyther man ne woman would
neuer haue ben so attentife to the wor-
kes of generation and encrease of
posteritie, to the vtter decay in short
tyme of al mankind. For ye shal heare
some women in time of their trauayle,
moued through great payne and intol-
lerable

The prickes
of nature.

The first booke.

No ioy with
out some sorow.

terable anguyſhe, forſweare and bowe
themſelfe, neuer to company with a
man agayne, yet after that the panges
paſſed, within ſhort whyle, for entyre
loue to theyr husbandes, and ſingular
naturall delite betweene man and wo-
man, they forget both the ſorow paſſed,
and that that is to come. Such be the
priue woꝝkes of God, and ſuch be the
pꝛiekes of nature, which neuer createth
no ſpeciall pleaſure vnaccompanyed
with ſonie ſorowe, neyther is there for
the moſt part any ſorowe, but that it
hath annexed ſonie ioy or comfort, leſſe
or moze, to alleuiate and lyghten the
burthen and weyght of diſpleaſure.

¶ Here is declared the ſituation of the
bladder in women.

Capit. xii.

Now for the vicinite & neigh-
bourhood that is betweene
the priue paſſage & the blad-
der, here I wyll declare a
lytle the nature of the bladder.

The

The bladder in woman is assituate and set vpon the forepart of the Mother, whose necke is annexed, fastened, & vnite within the priuie passage, vpon the forepart therof, as ye may see in the figure hereof, so that it is very hard to seperate the one from the other. This necke of the bladder in women is much shorter then in men, the which necke is enuironed and compassed with a Muskle, called the bladder Muskle, as it were with a brode and flat hoope ring, firming and clasping the vrine passage in such wyse, that no vrine can issue out of the bladder, tyll such tyme that this Muskle do open it selfe, & licence it thereto: which thing cometh to passe, other when the bladder is ouercharged with vrine, or els that the vrine, although that it be but lytle in qualitie, yet haue some Colericke qualitie with it, which for the sharpnes and eagernes of the qualitie pricking & tickling the Muskle, causeth it to open it selfe many tymes for litle quantitie. &c.

The Muskle
of the bladder.

How the bladder
Muskle is
forced to open
it selfe.

The

The first booke.

The descrip-
tion of the
bladder.

The body of the bladder is round, into the which a lytle aboue the necke thereof, entreth the seconde brine conduites, deriued from ech kidney one.

And here ye must first vnderstande, that on eche syde of the great maister vayne, and lyke wise of the Artyze, is situate a kydney, in latin called Ren. And to euery of them from the sayde great vayne and great Artyze, is there deriued a braunche of the vayne, and another of the Artyze, by the which braunches the kydneyes do attract and drawe blood vnto them, the which so drawen, they do (by theyr native office) seperate and deuide from the watery part, sending forth the water, other wise called brine downe to the bladder, through the brine vaynes or conduites.

Of the stone engendred in the backe.

In these kidneis is there many times in a great number of people, engendred the grauell or stone, which is called the stone in the backe, the which when it is broken, either of it selfe, or els by vertue of medicines, the grauell, rubbell, or peeces

peeces thereof, descend from the raines
or kidneis into the bladder, by the fore-
named brine conduites, and so from the
bladder out at the yarde, Where, yf the
peeces be rockie or bygge, it causeth to
the partie in the auoydyng of them, vn-
tollerable paynes and torment. And
note that for the most part the ryght
kidney euermore standeth higher then
the left.

Nowe agayne ye shall vnderstand,
that When the brine, pisse, or Water is
once entred through the foresayd brine
conduites, into the bladder, it can not
returue bpwarde againe the way that
it came (Were the bladder neuer so full)
for because that Where as the said brine
conduites doo enter into the bladder, in
the inner face of the bladder, there be set
before the mouth or gull of the condu-
ites, certaine litle skinny flappes, which
suffer any thyng to enter in, but When
it is once entred, these skinnie flappes
close the passage, and defende that no
thyng can rebounde, ne reflue backe a-
gayne,

The brine once
entred into the
bladder, can
not reuert.

The first booke.

gayne, euen as it is in a payre of bellows, which haue euer a great hole on the one syde thereof, to let into the bellows great store of Wynde or ayre at once, but When the bellows is full of Wynde, yf ye stop the nose thereof with somewhat, there Wyl none thereof returne agayne out by that way, the flappes of leather crosseing and defending the passage: yea, the more vehemently and the harder that ye presse both sydes of the bellows togeather, the faster and more stifly doth the flaps stop the way, and cleaue to the bordes of the bellows, the violence and force of the Wynde closing and stoppyng his owne way, so that the bellows would sooner breake, then that the ayre should come out there. And euen so it is in the bladder, sauyng that the sayde skynnie flappes of the bladder, be more craftily, properly, and artificially wrought, then any man can deuise.

When there is then any notable quantitie or qualitie of the vrine, gathered

thered together in the bladder, the bladder Muscle naturally doth open it selfe, and letteth it forth, passyng thorow the priue passage on the forepart thereof.

In this bladder also, as in the raines, is there in many people engendred the stone, Whereof commonly ensueth the strangury, Dissury, With other Diseases. The stone engendred in this place, yf it be of any notable quantitie, is very hard or rather vnpossible to be dissolued, or cured without incision and cutting out. But Women be not so prone ne apt to engender the stone in the bladder as men be, because the necke of their bladder is shorter and larger, howbeit notwithstanding, dyuers of them be here with greuously encumbred.

The stone engendred in the bladder.

Of the Vaynes which resort to the Matrix, and the partes thereof.

Item, of the Termes and their courses, with the causes thereof. Cap. xiii.

F. ij.

In

The first booke.



Inasmuche as the absolute vnderstanding of the nature of the termes in women, can not wel be perceyued, except fyrst it be knowen what waynes, how many, from whence, & after what sort they do attayne to the Matrix: therefore first I wyl entreate of them, and then consequently of the termes.

Three notable
waynes resor-
cyng to the
Matrix.

Uaines then notable, which may be perceyued by Anatomie to reach from severall partes of the great Vena cava, or maister wayne, to the Matrix and the partes therof, be thre, to whom for the more cleere, distinct, and evident doctrine sake, I wyl geue thre distinct and diuers names. The first shalbe named the bottome waynes of the matrix. The second, the necke waynes of the matrix. The thyrde, the sharpe waynes.

The bottome
waynes of the
Matrix.

The bottome waynes be they, which proceede and take theyr begynnyng at the seede bringer waynes, from whence they attayne to the bottome or founde of the Matrix, there dilatynge them-
selfe

selfe brode in manyfolde small flippes,
nourysshynge the body of the Matrix, as
hath been sayde already in the ende of
the. ix. Chapter.

As touching the necke baynes of the
Matrix, ye shall vnderstand that in the
foresaid. ix. chapter, I shewed you how
that the great maister bayne, and the
great artyze associate together, when
they attaine about Os sacrum, they begin
to diuide them selues in two partes
forkwyle, of the which the right (and so
likewyle the left) part of the forke is re-
diuided in other two partes forkwyle
also, whereof the vppermost and grea-
test bayne passeth downe along tyll it
come to the hockle bone, ouer whom it
proceedeth into the viter part of the
thygh, & so along downe to the legges
and feete. The innermost and leste or
smaller part or bayne of this seconde di-
uision, where it parteth from the vpper-
most, passeth downe along vntyll
it come to the great hole whiche is al-
waies in the share bone, through which

The necke
baynes.

The first booke.

Of the necke
vaynes of the
Matrix.

it entreth into the inner parte of the thygh or flanke. But by the way, or it attayne the sayd hole of the sharebone, it sendeth forth diuers flippes and smal braunches in the necke of the Matrix, & the nether part of the body of the Matrix, and also to the bladder, as ye may more cleerely see in the Figure hereof.

The share
vaynes.

The share vaynes take their begynnyng at the insyde of the aboue named vppermost and greatest vayne, even at the place where it beginneth to passe ouer the hockle bone, fro whence this slip is deriued on eche syde, that is, both the ryght and the left, vnto the myddle of the sharebone, where in men it sendeth forth braunches into the skinne that couereth the priue part & the coddes, and also the Peritoneum, whiche is the place that is betweene the fundement & the yarde. In women this vayne where it attayneth the middle part of the sharebone, it deriueeth and spreadeth it selfe into the lappes, sydes, or extreame ende of the priue passage, and also in
the

the sayd Peritoneum. And this shal suffice
for the declaration of the vaynes whi-
che resort to the matrix and her partes,
saue that ye must vnderstande, that
loke what order or procession of vaines
commeth to the matrix from the ryght
syde, the same selfe order is lyke wyse
in the lefte syde: and agayne, that
none of these vaynes runne to the Ma-
trix or otherwhere, vnassociate of an
artire.

Nowe to come to the declaration of
the nature of termes: ye shal vnderstande what is meant
by this word.
Termes.
that they be called in Latin Menstrua, so,
because that once in a moneth they hap-
pen alwayes to womankind after .xiii.
or .xv. yeeres of age passed (beyng in
theyr perfect health) In Englishe they
be named Termes, because they re-
turne eftsoones at certayne seasons,
tymes, and termes, and some name
them their flowers. What name so-
euer ye geue vnto it, yeshall wite, that
the thyng meant thereby, is nothyng
els, but the issuyng of certayne blood,

The first booke.

comprehended in the vaines of the matrix, there by lytle & lytle collected and gathered betweene terme and terme, and so agayne at wont and accustomed tymes, by nature expelled and sente forth.

The which blood, the matrix vaines do attract from the great Vena caua, into this part, and that not sodaynely or at once, but very soberly, and with much leasure, yea, so much as there is space betweene the one hauing of the flowres & the other (which is commonly three weekes, more or lesse, accordyng to the womans wont) so long be these sayde baynes in fylling, and if they were sooner full, soner also woulde they sende it forth agayne. For when they be once replenished, they can not conueniently or naturally contayne or drawe any more, tyl they be lyghtened and discharged of that that is drawen alredy.

Wherefore at the foresayde certayne circuities and termes, the small endes of these matrix baynes open themselves
in

in the inner face or superficie of the matrix, after an insensible & secrete priuie sort, and so let to passe forth this blood, which as I haue sayd, is called the womans termes.

The cause and reason why nature created this perpetual course of termes in women, in this: Forasmuche as almyghtie God had so institute that women shoulde be conceyued, efformed, or fashyoned, augmented, nouryshed, and brought to perfection. This coulde not be done vnlesse there were a commodious and conuenient place to this office assigned and destinate, whereof nature created the wombe or matrix to be the sayd receptacle, & house of office where in she mought at her leasure worke her deuine feates about the seede once conceived.

The cause of
the ordinance
of termes.

Agayne it is not inough the seede to be placed, vnlesse also it haue foode and nouryshment, to the encrease and augmentation of the same, wherefore prudent Lady nature full wisely hath provided

The first booke.

wided, that there shouide alwayes be prest and redy a continuall course and resort of blood in the baynes of the matrix, as a very naturall course, spring, fountayne, or wel, evermore redy to arise, water, and noyssh the feature, so sone as it shalbe conceiued, yea although the woman do neuer conceiue, other because she accompanieth not with man, other els for some other infirmitie, yet is there no fault in Nature, who hath prepared a place and foode to be at all tymes in a readinesse.

Which foode, although it is ordeyned for this necessary purpose, yet when the purpose fayleth (as it doth when there is no feature in the wombe to be fedde therewith) it should be to the place but a burthen and unprofitable load, there to remayne or lynger: wherfore then I say, at her set and prescript tyme she laboureth to cleare her self of it, and to expell it as superfluous and seruing to no vse. The which thing when she hath so done, yet vnto the sayde baynes of this
con

continually spring, resorteth of newe & gayne other freshe blood in the place of that that is departed, whiche by litle & litle cooling into them, in the wont circuit of time refilleth them, and then yet issueth againe, & so this continual course doth keepe alwayes in women, from their youth, til they come to about fiftie yeeres of age, or litle more or lesse, at what time naturally this spring dryeth away, which when it is gone, it is impossible for the woman to beare any mo chylde. For were the woman neuer so young & lusty, yet if she neuer had her termes (as some such there be) she shal neuer also haue no childe, albeit it may be that she may conceaue, but the seede conceaued can not proue, but melteth & issueth forth agayne for lacke of nutriment. Itē ye shal note, that where as some write & say, that the womens termes follow the course of the Moone, so that in the full or in the wane of the moone they should alwaies come: this is not true, for they haue the at one time
and

They that haue
no termes can
not beare chyl-
dren.

The first booke

Termes come
not to al women
lyke.

and other in all seasons of the Moone.
Agayne, as they come not to al women
after one sort, or at one season, so is the
tyme of theyr duraunce not all one in
euery woman, for in some they lynger
vpon them. v. vi. vii. yea. viii. dayes at
ech terme, to their great effeobliment
& strong paynes in the backe. In some
other commonly they passe not the
space of thre dayes at the vttermost,
wherfore such sustaine litle or no paines
at that tyme.

To be short, all women (for the most
part) which be of very delicate & moyst
complexions (as the sanguyne chiefly
be) haue greatest abundance of termes,
and longer tyme doth it endure vpon
them. And contrary, such as be dry and
collerike, other by nature, or labour and
trauayle, & such that be of complexion
cold, haue least store of termes, and lesse
tyme do they endure vpon them. After
what maner the feature conceaued is
fedde & nourished with this blood (mat-
ter at other tymes of the termes) I
Wyll

Wyll declare, when that I haue some
What fyrst shewed the nature of cer-
taine causes, wherein the feature con-
ceaued is wrapped and inuolued.

Of the three caules or wrappers wher-
in the infant is lapped. Cap. xiiii.



The seede conceaued
into the wombe
or Matrix of the
mother, anon it is
amplected, clip-
ped, & embrased
of the inner face
of the matrix, the
mouth or porte

therof in the meane while closed & shut
exquisitely. The seede the when it hath
ben a certaine litle space in the wombe,
by the naturall heate, or rather by the
inset & ingenite vertue of that place, is
enuironed & enclosed round with three
diuers coates, caules, or wrappers,
which in Latin they call Inuolucra.

The feature
conceyued, is
wrapped in
three caules.

The fyrst and most immediate or
nearest

The first booke.

The first caule.

nearest to the body of the conception, is a very thinne and cleere caule or skinne, Whiche containeth rounde about the whole feature, and yet is fastened to no part of the feature, but onely at the navel by certayne baynes and artyres, Whereof we wyl speake anone: this caule in Greke is called Amnios, in Latin Agniua, for because it is as delicate as lambes be. The Midwives commonly call it the coysse or biggin of the chyld, & some call it the chyldes shyrte, the which also many times proceedeth alone with the chyld, eyther vppon the chyldes head, or one of the armes or legges. And then the women reserue it as a thyng that shoulde betoken some great lucke to the chyld in tyme to come, for they beleue that euery chyld hath not such a coysse, because it doth appeare but seldom alone, vnaccompanied with the other caules. Betweene this wrapper or coysse, & the body of the infant, is collected and gathered the yelowish sweat which euaporeth continually from the
skyn

Skynne of the infant, whylest it is in the wombe.

The second Wrapper or caule, in Greke is called Allantoides, in Latin Farciminosa, in Englysh, these two termes do signifie (haggaswyle) for because that it is fashioned much after the shape of the outward skynne or bagge of an haggasse puddynge. The inner face and superficie of this caule is smoth and moyste, fastened to no part of the fyrst wrapper, but onely at the Nauell of the chylde, and contayneth also rounde about, in his compasse and cavitie or holownes, the whole chylde, and the sayd first caule.

The seconde wrapper.

Betweene this and the first caule, is gathered together all the store of brine that the chylde maketh, durynge the tyme it is in the mothers wombe, wher in the industrie of nature is to be lauded, which so prouideth, that this pylle or brine of the infant should be expelled betweene these two caules, and not remaine about the body therof, lest with the accrimony and eager sharpenesse hereof,

At here the brine of the chylde becometh.

The first booke.

hereof, it should endamage and greene the tender body of the baby.

The chyld
wrapper named
Chorion.

The chyld wrapper of the feature is named Chorion of the Grekes, in Latin, secunde or secundina, in English ye may call it the secundine : Albeit that in the second booke folowing, I do commonly vse to name the whole afterbirth, the secundine . And no doubt but that the auncientes which gaue the name (of secunde or secundina) to this wrapper, gaue the name of the whole to the part, for this terme (secunde or secundina) is proper & most due to the afterbyrth, the which afterbyrth, is nothyng els but an issuing forth, and proceeding of these three wrappers or caules, together with such grosse excrementes as haue ben engendred and remayning in the wombe, during the tyme of conception, and that immediatly after the chylde is first proceeded & come to lyght : for fyrst issueth the Infant, and then secondly the foresaid afterbirth, & therfore it may be iustly called the second birth, or secundine.

This

This Wrapper or caule the, doth not
 vniuersally, and in euery part compasse
 and couer the infant as the other two
 Wrappers do, but onely the myddle re-
 gion, as it were from the vpper part of
 the waste, to the share of the infante, so
 that it is compassed with this Wrapper
 as with a brode hoope ryng, the lati-
 tude or breadth whereof, is commonly
 to be esteemed about the breadth of. vi.
 or. viii. fingers, and so girdeth the childe
 round about the body therof, as it were
 a brode girth or swadling band: but yet
 ye must not vnderstand, that it shoulde
 touche immediatly the bodye of the in-
 fante, for betweene this and the bodye
 thereof (as I haue declared before) be
 the foresayd two other caules or wrap-
 pers, whiche generally incloseth round
 the whole corpes of y^e infant, where as
 this hoope caule compasseth and coue-
 reth but the middle region therof only.

The office & proper tie of this Wrap-
 per is suche: Fyrst the vtter face of it
 cleaueth and is affixed or basted verye

The office of
 the hoopes
 caule.

Gi

exact

The first booke.

exactly to the inner face and walles of the Matrix, by meanes of vnumerable small vaynes and artyes, which at this tyme doo shewe them selues more clearly in the face of the Matrix, then at any other time, the which also cleaue vnto this hoope caule in euerye parte thereof, touchyng the same Matrix, so that the said hoope caule and the inner side of the matrix be basted very thicke together, by the immediate meanes of the sayde vaynes and branches, even much lyke as the bodye of the Iuy tree basteeth and fasteneth it selfe vnto the walles of trees, whereby it creepeth by many hearie fibres or small threedes.

This coniunctiō betweene the matrix and the hoope caule, reacheth vniuersally so farre and so brode, as the latitude and longitude of the hoope caule doth extende it selfe round about in the Matrix. And these foresayd vaines and artires, do not only knit and vnite these two together, but also entreth into the substance of the hoope caule at euerye parte

part thereof. And within the sayd substance of the hoope caule, these manyfold smal braunches meete & entermingle the one with the other, the vaynes with the vaynes, and the Artires with the Artires, so that in theyr recountre and meetyng, they produce allwayes bigger and bigger vaynes and Artires. (but fewer) tyll at the last all these become two great vaynes, and two great artires. The which foure vessels from hence proceede together, passe & pearse through the other two caules spoken of before, & so entreth into the Navel of the child, so that the three caules by the meanes hereof be attached, nailed, and fastened to the childe's navel: and when they be entred into the Navel, the two vaynes degenerate in one, the which from this place mounteth upward along the inner superficie of the belly, vntyl it haue attained into the liver, wher it entering diuideth it self againe into many flippes, so that no doubt the blood is carried through this navel vaine, from the

The first booke.

vaines of the mothers Matrix into the liuer of the chylde, from whence againe it is attracted into all partes nourishable of the Infant.

Agayne, the two Artyres passe from the Nauel downward, the one along the ryght syde of the chyldes bladder, the other along the left, tyll it atteyne to the share Artires, whereof we spake before. Through these Artires, lyuely spirite and fre che ayre is deriued out of the mother into the childe, wherewith the naturall heate of the chylde is viuitified and refreshed.

And these two Artires with the foresayde nauyll vayne, when the chylde is borne, begin to wither and drye, euerye day more and more, & become much like a harpe string, without any holownesse or cavitie. Yet ye shall note that there is another vessel, whiche taketh his original at the bottome, found, or vpper part of the chyldes bladder, & extendeth it selfe to the nauyl of the Infant, through whiche it passeth vntyl it come
betweene

betweene the fyrst and the seconde caule
 without the chyldes body, where, by a
 priuie issue deuiled by nature for the
 same purpose, is expelled the vrine of
 the Infant, proceeding by this vrine
 wayne from the bladder, as partly was
 spoken of before, that part of this vrine
 vaine which is within the body, when
 the chyld is borne dryeth and wither-
 eth away, as I sayde of the other.

Which way
 the chyld doth
 expell the
 vrine.

The inner superficie or face of this
 Chorion is very strongly affixed and fast-
 ned to the vtter superficie of the seconde
 caule named Allantoides.

As for the bastynge that is betweene
 the Matrix and Chorion, many tymes it
 is weakened and effeoblised by reason
 of euyll, flegmaticke, or colericke hu-
 mours therabout, betweene the bastin-
 ges conceaued, whiche ouermuche ha-
 bouiding, do cloy the said bastynge vaines
 or strynges, whereby many tymes the
 one seuereth from the other before con-
 uenient season, & so causeth aborcement.

The mouthes or specks of the vaines in
 the

in

The first booke.

the matrix, wherby it cleaueth to Chorio,
be called in latin Acetabula & Cotiledones, for
what cause, or vpon what reaso, is both
nedelesse and vnprofitable here to be re-
hearsed. Agayne, the substance of this

The substance
of Chorion.

Chorion is not thinne like a skin, bladder,
or caule: but of al other partes of the bo-
dy, it may be most worthily resembled
to the spleane or melt in a man or beast,
the corpulencie or thicknes whereof, is
as much or more as the thicknes of the
thumbe, the colour swartishe black. Of
which colour also the blood therein con-
teyned, is as the remayne and refuse of
the purer, attract and drawen natural-
lye of the Infant, by the abouenamed
navil vaine. So that, to be short, Chorion
is the immediat receptacle and receauer
of al the vaines and artires, to be dedu-
ced from the Matrix to the chyld, and
the chyld receaueth only at his hande
the two vaines and Artires, whiche
by the way as they passe & pearse tho-
row the other two calles, towarde the
chyldes Nauyll, they sende into eche of
the

the caules innumerable small eye baynes and artyres, whereby the caules be susteyned, and encreased also.

The Termes then which were wont at other times to sturre theselues in the Matrix baynes, and at certayne circuites to issue forth: Nowe when there is a feature or chylde in the same Matrix conceaued, they proceede no more forth (as superfluous) but remaine and be reserved to the necessarie nutriment of the feature, and some part therof reflueth & is reuerted to the womens brestes, there to become mylke, as shalbe sayde in the next Chapter. And nowe hath nature her purpose wherfore she made and created this course of blood, as hath been written sufficiently in the Chap. before.

But here ye shall note, that they be greatly deceaued and abused, which call the Termes the womans purgation, or the cleansyng of theyr blood: as who should say that it were the refuse, drosse and vyle part of the other blood remaining in the body, naturallie every moneth.

The first booke.

The termes be
of so holisome
blood as any
other part in
the body.

moneth sequesterate and separated from
the purer, for the vilitie and euill quali-
tie therin comprehended. For vndoubt-
edly this blood is euen as pure and hol-
some as all the rest of the blood in anye
part of the body els.

The chyld be-
ing in the wom-
be, nourished of
the purest
blood.

As it to be thought, that nature would
feede the tender & delicate Infant in the
mothers Wombe, with the refuse of the
blood, or not rather with the purest of
it: Yes, and therfore forbecause that she
would that the pure blood commyng
fro the Matrix baynes shoulde be made
yet purer, she suffereth not the same to
enter immediatly into the Infant, but
first vseth another meane, and sendeth it
into Chorion or the hoope cal (as I haue
sayd before) where truely it hath a cer-
tayne circulation and another digesti-
on, wherby it is defecate, and clenfed ve-
ry exquisitly, by the diligencie of nature
attenuated and fined, and so at the laste
sent forth into the Infant, leauyng all
the grosser part in the spungy bodye of
the hoope caule.

Yet

The first booke. Fol. xxxv.

Yet much more are to be detested and
abhorred the shamefull lyes and flaunder
that Plinie, Albertus magnus de secretis
mulierum, & diuers other mo haue wryt-
ten of the venenous and dangerous
infectiue nature of the womans flowres
or termes, the which all be but dreames
and playne dotage. To rehearse theyr
fond wordes here, were but losse of inke
& paper, wherefore let them passe with
theyr aucthors.

Slanders of
the termes.

Which of the thre Matrix baynes conteyne the
Termes, and how the Wyke cometh
to the womans bestes.

Cap. xv.



MShewed you here
before, that to thre
different partes &
regiōs of the Ma-
trix, there resorted
from thre different
partes of vena caua,
thre sundrie bayne
slips. Nowe whi-
che of these slippes shoulde bryng the
blood

The first booke.

blood called the Termes into the Matrix, or from which of them the termes shoulde proceede, it is harde clearely to discusse, but onely by lykely coniectures. And yet it is a thyng very necessarye to be knowne, for the redyer aduertisement howe medicines for that purpose shoulde be applyed in that place, when neede shoulde be, eyther to prouoke the Termes by some casuallie stopped, or els contrary to restrayne them inmoderately flowyng. For yf the bottome baynes of the Matrix do contayne only the Termes, then shoulde any medicine conueyed vnderneath profite nothyng, except it be conueyed so farre vp, that it may attayne within the holownesse of the Matrix, the whiche is verely litle when the woman is not with chylde.

Agayne, yf the necke baynes of the Matrix do only contayne these termes, then needed medicines to be applyed no farther then to that place. As for the third Matrix baynes, there is none that

that doth once suspecte the Termes to
proceede from them : But manye there
be, which do suppose the termes to issue
both at the necke baynes, and at the bot-
tome baynes also, but most notably at
the necke baynes, for because (say they)
that these baynes do appeare more con-
spicuous and notable to the eyes when
a woman is cut open, then do the bot-
tome baynes, which may be very skant-
ly perceaued: wherfore they thinke that
these necke baynes shoulde be the grea-
ter stirrer of Termes.

Agayne (say they) we see many tymes
that after the woman is conceaued, yet
doth there issue termes tyl the thirde or
fourth, yea sometymes the fyfth mo-
neth, the whiche nowe at this tyme can
not proceede out of the Matrix: for the
port or mouth therof, according to auc-
thours opinions, is so closed after the
seede conceaued, that the poynt of a nee-
dle can not enter but by violence and
force. wherfore they conclude, that the
Termes at this tyme muste needes
spring

The first booke.

spring out of the necke vayne, and not out of the bottome vaines.

To those I aunswere, that both at this tyme and at all other tymes, the Termes issue onely out of the bottome vaines, & out of such of the necke vaines as spreade them selues onely within the Matrix, as may be seene in the figure. For insomuche as nature dyd create the course of Termes for no other cause, but onely to be a preast and redye foode at all tymes to the feature conceaued, to what purpose shoulde the Termes in the necke vaines of the Matrix serue, where there can neuer be any conception, neither the seede there can remayne. And as concerning the issuing of the Termes after conception, I say that the port of the Matrix is neuer so exactly close, but that such a liquid thing as blood is, may thryll and coole out of it, yea although (as they say) the poynt of a needle can not enter in thereat. For ye may see, that betweene the chynes and chynkes of closelye ioyned boordes, the

the poynt of a needle Will not easily enter, yet Water or any other liquid thing, may passe through without lette, and even so is it in the Matrix.

And yet for all this, it shal not folowe that the seede should passe out thereat, as well as the blood, for the seede is of a more fast, compacte, and stedfast substance. And besydes this, by that tyme that the seede hath ben but a daye or two in the Matrix, it waxeth yet more stable and stedfast, by the natural heate of the place, yea and is compassed with a thynne ryme, as a tender egge is vnder the shell, wherefore it Will not so soone issue out of the matrix without great iniurie.

Here agayne ye shall note the cause why that Physicians do counsell women which be desirous to conceaue, and can not for lubricitie, moystnes, or waterishnes of the matrix (whereby the attractife and attentife power of the Matrix is debilitat and weakened) to take fumes & vapours vnderneath, or other
medic

The first booke.

medicines at the mouth to dry the said humidities, immediately after the Termes be passed, and not bypon the comming of them: for if the woman should be conceaved bypon the comming of the sayde Termes, then woulde they commix them self with the seede, before the seede haue gotten yet any perfect ryme or caule, whereby the seede shoulde become the thinner, and be made fluy, and so to passe forth agayne out of the Matrix, washed out with the Termes.

But immediately after that the Termes be passed, if the seede be conceaved, then shall it haue sufficient tyme to get a strong ryme or caule ouer it, before the Termes come agayne. And agayne, whyles the little speckes or mouthes of the matrix baines be yet open, after the letting forth of the Termes, they shall be the more apt to cleaue and to ioyne the selues with the feature, by meanes of calues wherein the feature is inuolued, and cheefely of Chorion, named the hoope caule, as hath ben sufficientlye sayde

sayde here before.

Yet when the seede hath ben three or foure wekes in the wombe, it is not of sufficient quantitie to consume into his nutriment all the blood that was wont to resort into the Matrix vaines, wherfore the first, second, yea & third month, sometymes at the womans wont time of Termes, there issueth and sheweth some blood more or lesse: the more in the which were wont at other tymes to haue abundaunce of them. &c. And ye shal note, that when the child is conceived, & that the caule Choriō, is fastened & basted to the matrix by the vaines thereof, yet do not all the vaines of the matrix attaine to the said Choriō, but a certaine, so far as Choriō doth reach: howbeit the larger that Choriō groweth with the child, the mo vaines doth he couer. Wherfore fro those baynes that be not yet affixed vnto Choriō, do the termes flow at this time: but when the child beginneth once to come to a greater perfectiō & groweth, then is all the terme blood reserved in

The first booke.

in the Matric, as litle yenough to satisfie the childe, and then also part thereof mounteth vp into the brestes, & becommeth milk, as shalbe sayde hereafter.

Yet agayne to confyrme myne opinion, that the Termes doo only issue out of the vante of the Matric: We shal vnderstand, that at sundry tymes I haue had two diuers Women incure, the one in London, and the other in Paris: Of which, the one by a fall of her horse, the other by a violent thrust and squat on the buttockes vpon the harde stones in the streete, being both neare the time of theyr purgation, chaunced also both of them into one maner of disease (that is to say) immediatlye here vppon theyr Termes dyd issue, and so continued dayly, to the one of them, the space of half a yere, & to the other a whole yere: so that after that time the Termes staid agayne, and issued no more dayly as before, but once in foure wekes, at what time they voided great lumpes, cakes, or cloddes of blood, congealed together

even

euē like the lyuer of a beast. And in the meane time, betweene eche boyding of these lumps of blood (whiche as I haue sayde come to passe once in foure weekes) euery day continually appeared and issued their whyte flowres (as they named it.)

Nowe to declare the perticuler occasions of this maner of boydyng of the termes, ye shall vnderstand, that by the force of the fall and squat, the Matrix baynes brake, and that so muche the more promptly, that they were the fuller of blood, and that nearer their tyme of purgation, vpon which bracke, the blood dayly issued afterwarde, whereby the vigour & kinde heate of the matrix, by litle and litle decreased and decayed, frigiditie and coldnesse succeeded. By whiche occasion also the mouth or port of the matrix, waxed the more contract and narrower, for cold closeth, knytteth, & cometh. Hereto helpeth also not a litle the great vse of cold binding medicines, which eche of them dyd apply to

The first booke.

this place at the simple counsaile of ignorant persons.

The port then of the Matrix by this occasion closed & contracted, the blood wont alwayes daily to proceede, remaينeth within the Matrix, where as fast as it droppeth and cooleth out of the baynes, it coniealeth and cluddereth together, like as ye may see, that when a man is let blood in a basin or other vessel. and that the blood stande styll in it the space of. v. or. vi. houres, it wyll be concret and coniealed in a cludder like a lyuer, the watery part thereof swimmyng and flitting above vpon the face of it: and euen so is it of the blood coniealed in the matrix, so that when there is so much of this coniealed blood conceived together in the said matrix, that it can not contayne it any longer, then violently and perforce it issueth out together, with farre greater peril, danger, and dolour to the woman, then though she laboured with a chylde.

The whyte flowres that issued, during

ring the time that this blood gathered in the Matrix, was (no doubt) the very Watery the part that flected when the blood coniealed, for that water can neuer conieale as the blood doth: wherefore euery day as fast as the blood dyd conieale in the Matrix, so fast also dyd the water separate it selfe from the blood, and so issued.

Notwithstanding, I am not ignorant that the very white floures in deede do proceede from the seede carriers, into the angles or corners of the Matrix, and so fro thence outwarde, the which disease also men haue many times. And it cometh either of the abundance of flegme in the body, or of the corruption & euill qualitie mixed in the seede. &c.

These examples as I suppose, may be sufficient evidences, that the Termes spring alwayes fro within the matrix, & not from any part of the necke therof. Item, I haue seene diuers other womē, in whom their termes haue stayed the space of. vi. viij. & x. weekes, where with

H. ii.

their

The first booke.

their bellies haue encreased and waxed bigger, so that they haue thought themselves to be with chylde: Notwithstanding, at the last haue boyded such lyke lumps of blood, as I haue spoken of here before, not without great peryll and daunger to them in the boydyng, wherewithal their bellies haue relaxed and decreased againe. And thus I make an ende to talke any more of the nature & course of the termes: and now wil I declare somewhat of the conueyance and course of the mylke into the womans brestes: for there is great affinitye, communitie, and familiaritie betweene the Matrix & the brestes, which naturally do perceyue and feelee, anon when the matrix hath conceived, and then begin they to bryue & to make redy theyr part, agaynst the tyme that the Matrix hath all done her part, that is, agaynst the chylde be borne. The mylke whiche commeth to the brestes, is engendred of the Termes (according to the most mens opinions.)

But

But to knowe which way the sayde
Termes should attayne from the Ma-
trix to the brestes, ye shall vnderstande,
that the vppermost and greatest bayne
of the seconde diuision, spoken of in the
xiiij. chap. where it attayneth the hockle
bone, redy to passe out of the holonesse
of the belly into the thygh, before that it
perse the kel called Peritoneum, it sendeth
foorth a notable bayne branche, which
from hence mounteth vpwarde along
the belly betweene the ryght Muske &
the ouerthwart, til it come a litle aboue
the navel, where the extreame or vpper
ende thereof diuideth it selfe in many-
folde lytle braunches, meetyng and en-
termynglyng them selues with the ex-
treame lytle branches or flippes of ano-
ther lyke bayne, descendyng from the
vppermost chestbone, downe along the
insyde of the chest, and the insyde of the
vpper parte of the belly, vntyll it meete
with the foresayd mountyng bayne, a
litle aboue the Navel.

And ye shall note, that this bayne
H. iij. branch

The first booke.

branch proceeding from vena caua, at the hyghest chestbone downewarde along the inner side of the chest or brest, by the way as it passeth, it yeeldeth certayne lytle slippes & small branches of it selfe, betweene the rybbes into the brestes. wherfore the consent of all aucthours is, that by the meanes of these descen- dyng bayne branches at both sydes of the body, & the other ascendyng bayne branches on both sides of the belly, there shoulde be great communitie & felowes- shyp betweene the brestes in women, and the Matric or the Wombe.

For doubtlesse by common experience, ye may see that whē the time of concep- tion in women is, & that by this meanes the termes be stopped, then as the ter- mes do deminysh & waxe lesse, so doth the mylke in the brestes encrease and waxe euery day more & more, as who might say that the superfluitie of blood, wont at other tymes to boyde in the name of Termes, now at this tyme by the prouidence & prouision of Nature, is
retayn

retayned as no superfluitie, but rather a necessary humour, reuerted and destinate an other way, that is to say, sent from the baynes of the Matric, part thereof vppwarde, by the forenamed ascendyng bayne branches, at their handes agayne receyued and naturally attracted by the other descendyng brest baynes, through Whom it is carped into the brestes, Where by newe naturall circulations it is digested into Whyte milke, being before red blood, redy now prepared to nouryshe the chylde when nature shall sende it into the worlde.

Agayne, so long as the woman getteth sucke to the chylde, & hath store of mylke in her brestes, her termes be of very lytle or no quantitie. These be evidences that there should be great familiaritie betweene the Matric and the brestes, forsomuch as the ebbing of the one, is the flowing of the other: wherefore Physitions sometymes,, when the floures issue more vehemently then needeth, they set boryng glasses vnder the
H. iij. brestes,

The first booke.

brestes, meaning thereby to reuert and
returne vppwarde, the matter enclyned
to much downeward: the which prac-
tise how much it preuaileth, I wyl not
here dispute. Yet in this matter to dis-
cuss the very veritie as neare as reason
and the knowledge of Anatomie wyl
geue leaue, ye shal not vnderstande my
sayinges that I should meane that al-
wayes when the termes stop beneath
by any colde, thought, or other occasi-
ons, by and by the same blood to stye
and mount vpp into the brestes, & there
to become mylke, for the contrary here-
of is dayly seene. For most commonly
they in whom these termes do stop, for
any other cause then conception, the su-
perfluous blood retayned in the body,
and in the paynes wandryng, causeth
to the partie great headache, taketh a-
way their stomacke, and engendreth di-
uers other inconueniences, neyther in
the meane while is there any thing the
more mylke in the brestes.

Wherefore ye may well say, that the
cause

cause of plentie of milke in the womans brestes in time of her being with chylde, and much more afterwarde, commeth chiefly by a priuie naturall instinction, whereby it is geuen vnto the brestes at that tyme more then at any other, to drawe vnto it selfe greater abundance of blood, conuerting and altering the same by the propertie of the place, into conuenient mylke.

It is not a sufficient cause to replenish the brest the Termes to be by any occasion stopped beneath, but there must also concurre the attractive power, inset in the brestes to drawe the sayde blood (matter at other times of the Termes) without which attraction, be the Termes neuer so long stopped, yet shall the brestes be nothing the fuller, if it chance that this attractive power halte, or be not able to attract sufficient matter to make mylke vpon for the Infant: then Whisitions are wont to helpe the debilitie of nature, with cuppyng glasses set vpon or vnder the brestes, or els with gentle

The first booke.

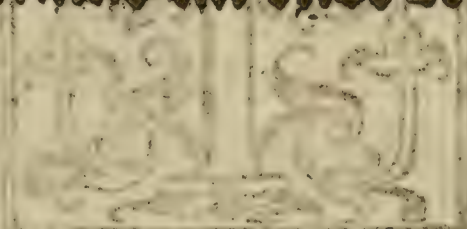
gentle attractive emplaisters applied to the same places.

And although that into the brestes do resort great store of other waynes, some descending from the waynes of the shoulders, and other some from the waynes passing by the armeholes into the armes and handes, the which in moyson and notable bygnesse, much surmount the quantitie of the abouenamed descending brest waynes, as it may appeare evidently in many women which haue these waynes appearing in the superficie of their brestes immediatly vnder the skin, very conspicuous & sightful: yet notwithstanding it is thought by strong coniectures, that the mylke in the brestes should be engendred only vpon the blood mountyng from the aforesayde ascending Matrix waynes, and not vpon the blood conteyned in the other waynes, howe conspicuous so ever they be, so that the blood in them comprehended, serueth onely to the nourishment of the substance of the brestes.

The first booke. Fol. xliij.

brestes them selues, & not to the main-
tenaunce of the mylke.

To declare here curiously the maner
that nature vseth in circulatynge of the
attracted blood, whereby alteration is
made from one coloure to another,
woulde require a longer processe, the
which for breuitie we wyll omit at this
tyme With many other problemes,
doubtes, and difficulties concernynge
the same. And so we make an ende of
this fyrst booke.



The first booke.

The declaration by letters of the Figures following, wherein be set forth to the eye, euery part in woman, mentioned in this booke before: Which in the former printynges hath been corrupted, but now truly set forth,

¶ The first Figure of the partes of women, with the declaration and karacters of the same.



In this fyrst figure is set forth the tronke or stocke of a womans body layde on the ground, whose Peritoneum is opened with the muskles of the Abdomen, and turned ouer towarde the insyde, accordyng to the vse of cutting, and after ward we haue cut away all the bowels or entrayles from Mesenterium, the strayght entrayle beyng yet left in the body, with also the whole Mesenterium, whose pannicles we haue here some what taken away, and set a portion from the other; that the nature of Mesenterium myght come to lyght, but this present figure is for this cause principally declared and set forth, that it might so shew the position of the Matrix or wombe, and the Bladder, as in this woman it is seene, no part of the said Matrix or wombe being moued.

For here is as yet no pannicle pluckt away from the Matrix or wombe, but that all thynges are here yet wholly seene, lyke wyle as in women
Some

Some what fat they do appeare to the cutter, the bowels beyng taken away. For women are so fatte, that when they be bered and kylled with long sicknesse, and become most leanest, then they shewe no kynde of procelle of vessels, but lesse the pannicles or thynne coueringes be separated asunder.

A.B.C.D. The inner face or part of the former seate of Peritoncum.

EE. A part of Mesenterium, knittynge the thynne intrayles to the backe.

FF. Here is noted another pannicle of Mesenterium, plucked from the other which we haue marked with G and G. But both the pannicles do shewe the order of the vessels of Mesenterium, and order of the harnels put betweene the distributions of the vessels.

HH. In this part of Mesenterium, the entrayle Colon was committed and set to, where it was nyghest to the strayght gut.

I. And in this part of Mesenterium, dyd consyst and stande the beginning of the intrayle Colon, or his continuance with the thynne intrayles, and also the blynde gut.

K. The strayght gut beyng there cut of where Colon dyd ende, whiche seate or place is ryght agaynst the place of the knitting togeather of the hocke bone, with the lowest turning ioynt of the loynes.

L. The former seate of the bottome of the matrix, from whence is nothyng perceiued pluckt away.

M. The right stone or testicle in a woman.

N. The

The first booke.

N. The left stone of a woman, and the former part of this is here entirely seene, although there be of the ryght but a small portion perceyued, and it is for this cause that we haue in such manner set forth the ryght stone: for both the testicles are couered with a pannicle, whiche pannicle bringeth downe the seede vesselles of a woman, which do spring from Peritoneum: but we haue vncouered the lefte testicle of that pannicle, with the hande onely without any knyfe, leauyng the ryght as you see. For this pannicle doth not growe to the former seate of the testicle in any part thereof, but lyeth there onely.

O. A pannicle springing and growyng forth from the right seate of Peritoneum, and comyn. t. ting the ryght testicle with the seede vesselles on this syde, and those vesselles whiche infolde the hygher seate of the Matrix to the backe, conteyning together the Matrix or wombe, and afterward with the pannicle of the other syde, constitutyng the second coate of the Matrix.

P. This way in the foresayde pannicle, runne forth fleshy fybres or thinne skyrnes, constitutyng the ryght Muskle of the Matrix, or wombe.

QQ. With these characters, the pannicle of the left syde is noted, whiche is correspondent and like to that pannicle, which the foresaid OO did poynt to vs.

RS. The former part of the necke of the Matrix, couered as yet, betweene R and S with that cote which

which the partes of Peritoneum offer vnto it, which bring forth vessels vnto it, and from it, and do knit it to Peritoneum: but the space being betweene R and S, doth shew the largenesse of the necke of the Matrix. And the wrinkles which are seene here, are they which the necke of the Matrix falling into it selfe, not stretched forth agayne, doth shew in the cutting.

T. The bladder whose hinder part is here chiefly seene, for we haue so cast our eye in the declaration and setting forth of this figure, as though we woulde principally beholde in the body being prostrate and layde along, the hinder seate of the bladder, whiche looketh towarde the Matrix.

For yf ye wyll suppose and imagine this body of a woman, to be set vpright, as that whiche next foloweth, ye shoulde thinke otherwile then the thyng is, that the bottome of the Matrix is set forth much higher then the bladder.

V. This is a portion of the Duell, deliuered in the cutting from Peritoneum, and turned ouer together with the vessels seruing properly to the chyld.

X. A portion of a vayne going from the Duell to the lyuer.

Y. A way going from the hyghest seate or place of the bottome of the bladder, pertayning vnto the Duell, and bringyng from thence the vrine of the chyld, betweene his seconde and the innermost infolder.

K. & Shew

The first booke.

Ket & She we two artyes creeping forth hither from the Mauell, by the sydes of the bladder, and graft in or continued in this place, to the branches of the great artire, going principally to the holes of the bones about the priue members.

The declaration of the seconde Figure of the members of women, and of the karacters of the same.



We haue here taken away the skin fro the right teate of this present figure, that the nature of the teates myght, as nygh as may be, be set before the eyes: & after ward we haue cutte away the ventricle with the bowels, and also Mesenterium and the Splene, leauyng the strayght entrayle in this place vnnedled with, as well as we did in the figure before. And moreouer, we haue as it were, taken away from the vttermoſt coate whiche Peritoneum gaue vnto it, cuttyng away also all the pannicles, that the vessels carying forth the substance and matter of seede to the stones, and also the vessels carying away the seede from thence to the Matrix, shoulde appeare and be seene. Also we haue turned ouer the bladder downewarde on the leste syde, lyke wyse breakyng

breakyng the way or conduite which beareth forth the brine to it from the ryght kydney, that the insertion of the wayes of bearyng forth the brine to the bladder myght appeare, and that the bladder should not let the inspection or sight of the Matrix or wombe. Last of all, we haue cutte away from this figure a portion of the bones about the priuy members, that the neckes of the Matrix & of the bladder myght the more commodiously be seene.

A A. Waynes runnyng forth oftentymes to the teates, from those wayes whiche are offered to the skynne, whiche is brought ouer the heyghe of the shoulder.

B. Waynes sprynging from those baynes which are led forth by the arme hole to the hand.

C. The principall body of the teate.

DD. Karnels and fatnesse spread abroad euery where on the karnelly body, marked with C.

EFGH. The hynder outsyde or insyde of the former seate of Peritoneum outwarde. For the former region of Peritoneum is here bowed upward and downward toward the syde.

IK. Portions of Waynes and also Artyres, creapyng forth downward, vnder the brest bone from the throte.

L. The gybolyte or swellng seate of the lyuer.

M. The holow part of the liuer is here also somewhat seene.

N. A small portion or peece of the wayne goyng from the Nauell to the lyuer.

O. The stocke of vena porta is here cut away,

J. i.

with

The first booke.

With the vesselles brought vnto it.

P. The holowe bayne.

Q. The great artyre.

R. The rootes of the artyres goyng to the ventricle, the lyuer, the spleane, the caule, and to the bowelles.

S. The begynnynge of a bayne infoldyng the fat coate of the left kydney.

T. The bayne and artyre whiche bryngeth the whayse humour to the ryght kydney.

V. The bayne and artyre whiche bryngeth the whayse humour into the left kydney.

X. The begynnynge of the bayne goyng into the fatte coate of the ryght kydney.

Y. The former seate of the ryght kydney.

Z. The former seate of the left kydney.

aa. The way that bryngeth the brine from the ryght kydney into the bladder, but at the neather murther, a is broken away, but the portion that is left of this way, and is continued to the bladder, marked with b.

b. The way that carryeth forth the brine from the ryght kydney into the bladder.

c. The way that carryeth forth the brine from the left kydney into the bladder.

dd. The ryght seede bayne, whose begynnynge the hygher d doth shewe.

e. The seede bayne goyng to the left testicle.

f. The sprynging forth of the artyres of seede.

g. The ryght seede artyre.

h. The left seede artyre.

ikl. The former part of the bottome of the Matrice,

trix, and i sheweth the ryght blunt angle or corner of the sayde bottome, where k sheweth the left, but l sheweth the region or place of the matrix, where the mouth of his bottome consisteth, and where his necke beginneth.

m. This is the strayght gut. And that I may the lesse burden both the sydes of this figure with many letters, I wyll at this present affixe the Characters but on the one syde onely.

n. A portion of the bayne and artyre of seede, whiche do go to the vpper syde of the bottome of the wombe.

o. Portion of the baynes and artyre of seede goyng to the testicle, and there ioynyng and goyng together, and constitutyng.

p. A body lyke the spire of a steeple, and this letter p doth poynt vs the roote or foundation of this body, whereas the sayd roote or foundation is committed and ioyned to the testicle.

q. From that sayd body such vessels runne forth into the tunicles, committynge and ioynyng the testicle to Peritoncum.

r. The former face or part of the testicle.

s. The begynnyng of the vessell whiche beareth forth the seede from the testicle into the Matrix.

tt. The bowinges and turnynges ouer agayne of the vessell whiche beareth forth the seede, which turnynges the sayd vessell maketh round about the sydes of the testicle.

v. The goyng forth of the vessell which carryeth forth the seede of the Matrix.

The first booke.

xx. The necke of the Matrix.

y. Vessels foldyng in the lower seate of the bottome of the Matrix or Wombe, and the necke also of the same.

z. A bayne commyng from those vessels to the bladder, which vessels do folde and wynde in the necke of the Matrix, and this Karacter also noteth the insertion of the wayes of the brine.

μβ The hynder seate of the bottome of the bladder.

γ The Muskle of the necke of the bladder.

α In this seate the necke of the bladder is implanted into the necke of the Matrix.

α Small skinnie portions of fleshe of the necke of the mouth or openyng of the Wombe or Matrix, and the small hyllockes of the Matrix, with the mouth or openyng of the necke thereof, neede here no speciall declaration with Karacters.

ζ The roote of the Artire, going into the lowest part of Mesenterium.

α Vessels which do ascende and ryle hyward to the muskles of the Abdomen, from the Waynes and Artires which do go into the legge.

¶ The declaration of the Karacters of the thyrd Figure of women.



His present figure sheweth the matrix or wombe, with the thinne couerynges which do bynde it to Peritoneum, cut forth from the body and the

The first booke. Fol. clviij.

the necke thereof is here so folded together, and turned ouer, that the mouth or openyng of the bottome of the Matrix doth here manifestly shewe it selfe. And we haue lyke wyse so opened the bottome and the necke of the bladder, that the holownesse of the same, with the insertion of the wayes of brine, are here manifestly scene.

A. The former face of the bottome of the Matrix, beyng not yet vncouered of any pannicle.

BB. The necke of the Matrix.

C. A part of the bottome of the Matrix, swelling forth into the vpper seate of the necke of the Matrix, in maner of a kirknell.

D. The mouth of the bottome of the Matrix.

EE. A pannicle knittynge the Matrix to Peritoneum, and conteynyng his vesselles.

F. The left testicle of the Matrix.

G. The bayne and artire of seede.

H. Portion of the seede bayne and artyre, commynge to the vpper seate of the bottome of the Matrix.

I. A portion of the seede bayne and artyre commynge to the testicle.

K. The vessell carryng the seede from the testicle into the Matrix.

L. The holownesse of the bladder.

M. The insertion of the wayes of the brine.

N. Here hangeth forth a litle peece of the wayes of the brine.

The first booke.

The declaration of the Characters of the
fourth Table of Women.



All branches runnyng forth
into the pannicle, where they
are committed and ioyned to
Peritoneum.

A portion of the Vayne and
artyre goyng into the testicle,
falling to the upper seate of the bottome of the
Matrix.

The commixtion and goyng together of the
seede vayne and artyre, that is lyke the spyre of
a steeple, whiche we lyken to the braded vaynes
called Varices.

The left testicle.

The vessell carryng forth the seede from the
testicle into the Matrix.

The blunt angle or corner of the bottome of
the Matrix, in whom the vessell that bryngeth
forth the seede attempteth his insertion.

In this seate the bottome of the Matrix is
ended into the necke thereof, and in this region
or place is the beginnyng of the mouth or ope-
nyng place thereof.

The necke of the Matrix or wombe.

Here the necke of the bladder is brought forth
into the necke of the Matrix, and there endeth.

Those are vessels infolding the nether seate of
the bottome of the Matrix, and also his necke.

The swelling brimmes at the mouth of the
necke of the Matrix.

The

The first booke. Fol. clxx.

The wayes that bryng the brine from the raynes into the bladder.

The declaration of the Karacters of the. v. vi.
vii. and. viii. Figures.



We haue now diuided this fyfth table of the wombe or Matrix, conteynyng a male chyld on the former syde, with a long section or cut, and another which are ouerthwart styte, removing and takyng away, into the sydes,

partes of the coates of the bottome of the Matrix, yea, even from the uttermost infolder of the chyld.

A B C D. The inner syde of the sayd infolder of the Matrix, whiche before the section was brought about and couered with the infolders of the chyld.

E E. The utter side of the Matrix, and the hygher E noteth the top or the right angle or corner of the Matrix, brought forth upward & toward the right side, more then toward the left, because it is a man chyld which is in the wombe.

F. The fyft or the uttermost infolder of the chyld.

G G. The seconde infolder of the chyld is here

J. iiii.

also

The first booke.

also a great part seene.

H. A part of the necke of the Matrix, to whom in the other syde we haue left growyng to it a bayne and an artire, whiche is principally distributed into the lower seate of the bottome of the Matrix.

I. Here is also yet left the ryght testicle, that the situation of it myght be seene and perceiued in women being with chylde.

The fyrst Table sheweth the infolders of the chylde, taken whole away from the Matrix, and not broken.

K.  H & uttermoste infolder of the chylde.

L. The seconde infolder of the chylde, which forsomuch as it is transpernaint in maner of a pannicle, it suffereth the chylde (be wrapt within this third infolder) in it somewhat to be seene.

In the seuenth Table we haue diuided the utter and the seconde infolder of the chylde, with a long section or cutte, and we haue here exprest and shewed forth both the said infolders, taken away from the thyrde infolder, and the thyrde infolder also yet whole.

MM. The thyrde or the inmost infolder of the chylde, whiche because it is so thynne that one may easly see through it, the fourme of the chylde lying therein, somewhat sheweth hym selfe to the eyes.

N. The

N. The proceeding or order of waynes and Ar-
tires, goyng to the Nauell from the fyrst infol-
der of the chylde.

OPOP. The seconde infolder of the chylde.

And OO. shewe his insyde, where PP. sheweth
his bitter syde.

QR. The fyrst infolder of the chylde, where Q.
noteth the outsyde, and R. the insyde, but the
proceedyng and order of the vesselles by the se-
conde and the thyrde infolder, are perfectly kno-
wen without any helpe of the Characters.



And the eyght Table expresseth the
chylde deliuered from all his coates,
and so it sheweth hym lying, by the
wonderfull prouidence of nature,

not as the common opinion of the
bulgar sort of wyters affymeth, but as you
may here see in these figures, & so doth it lye in
the middelt of the wombe. For it is most vnttrue
that the chylde doth lye in the wombe rounde,
lyke as it were bowed, so that the knees shoulde
touch to the face, but as he is set here in the .viii.
figure. And obseruyng this true situation of
hym, you shall fynde commonly none other situ-
ation of the chylde, nor ioynyng of any ioynt of
hym therein, then is here expessed.

But in this figure M M N O P O P Q & R. do
note the same as in the seventh Table, saue
that M and M do shewe the insyde, or inner part
of the thyrde infolder. But S sheweth here pri-
uately the goyng forth of the vesselles of the
Nauell

The first booke.

Mauell, which is betweene the Mauell and the ioyning together of the vessels with the thynde infolder, whiche is also brought forth with a great space betweene the shewing, where be certayne (as it were) knottes or swellinges, accordyng to the number of the which knottes more or lesse, Wydwyues foolysly do prophesie epyther fewe or many chyldren to the woman, which of the learned men is taken but for a very fantasie, and worthy of reprehention. And moreover, when the chylde commeth forth (as it chaunceth sometymes) hauyng that about his necke, they say that it is the same chyldes destinye to be hanged, with many other foolyshe conceytes, rather to be laughed at, then to be beleued.

The declaration of the Characters of the ninth Figure of women.



IN the ninth figure sheweth the Matrix cut forth of the bodye, beyng of that bygnesse as it was seene taken forth of a woman at the laste Anathomie which I did see at the vniuersitie of Padua in Italie. And moreover we haue so diuided and cutte asunder the bottome of the Matrix by the myddle, that the concavities and hollowe bought within the same myght be perceyued, and the thycke substance also of both the coates of the Matrix in women, when they

they be with chyld.

AABB. The concauitie and holowe bought of the bottome of the Matrix.

CD. A line somewhat after the maner of a seame called in Latine Scorum, which doth belong to the place wherein the testicle doth lye, whiche swelleth somewhat forth into the bought of the bottome of the Matrix.

EE. The thickeesse of the inner and proper coate of the bottome of the Matrix.

FF. A portion of the innermer bottome of the Matrix, swelling forth downewarde from the hygher seate of the Matrix, into the holownesse and bought of the bottome.

GG. The begynnyng of the necke or openyng place of the bottome of the Matrix.

HH. The second or uttermer infolder of the bottome of the matrix, descended from Peritoneum.

II. Here we haue reserued a portion on both the sydes of the thinne couerynges, descended from Peritoneum, and conteynyng the Matrix.

K. Here is also seene the substance of the necke of the Matrix, because the cuttyng where with we diuided the bottome of the Matrix, was begun at this place.

L. A part of the necke of the bladder, implanted into the necke of the Matrix, casting forth into it the brine. The swelling partes of Abdomen, and whatsoeuer is els to be consydered thereof, they may be sufficiently known without direction of Characters.

FINIS.

The second booke,

Of the tyme of byrth. And which is
called naturall or unnaturall.

Cap. i.



In the first booke we have
sufficiently set forth and
described the maner, situa-
tion, & forme of the Ma-
trix wherein man is con-
ceaved, with dyuers other matters ap-
pending and concernyng the better un-
derstandyng of the same. And now
here in this second Booke, we wyll de-
clare the maner of the quytyng and de-
lyuerance of the Infant out of the mo-
thers wombe, with other thinges ther-
to appertaynyng. And first here in this
Chapter we wil declare the tokens and
signes whereby ye may perceiue whe-
ther the tyme of labour be neare or not.
For when the houre of labour appro-
cheth neare, these signes folowing euer-
more proceede and come before.

First certayne dolours and paynes be-
gin to growe about the guttes, the na-
pyll, and in the raynes of the backe, and
like

Tokens to
know when the
tyme of deliue-
rance is neare.

lyke wyse about the thyghes, and the other places beyng neare to the priuie partes, which lyke wyse then beginneth to swell and to burne, and to expell humours, so that it geueth a playne & euident token that the labour is neere.

But ye shall note, that there is two Two sortes of deliuerance. maner of byrthes, the one called naturall, the other not naturall. Naturall byrth is, when the chylde is borne both in due season, and also in due fashon.

The due season is most commonly after the nyynth moneth, or about fourtie weekes after the conception, although some be deliuered sometimes in the seuenth moneth, and the chylde proueth very well. But such as are borne in the eight moneth, other they be dead before the byrth, or els liue not long after.

The due fashon of birth is this: first The due fashon of birth. the head commeth forwarde, then foloweth the necke & shoulders, the armes with the handes lying close to the body towarde the feete, the face and forepart of the chylde beyng towarde the face and

The second booke.

and forepart of the mother, as it appeareth in the fyrst of the byrth Figures. For as hath been sayde alreedy in the fyrst Booke, before the tyme of delyuerance, the chylde lyeth in the mothers wombe the head vpward, and the feete downewarde, but when it shoulde be delyuered, it is turned cleane contrary, the head downewarde, the feete vpwarde, and the face towarde the mothers belly, and that yf the byrth be naturall. Another thyng also is this, that yf the byrth be naturall, the deliuerance is easie without long tarying or loking for it.

The byrth not naturall is, when the mother is delyuered before her time, or out of due season, or after any other fashyon then is here spoken of before: As when both the legges proceede first, or one alone, with both the handes vp, or both downe, other els the one vp and the other downe, & dyuers other wyse, as shalbe hereafter more clearly declared.

Of

Of easie and breasie, difficult, or dolourous
delyueraunce, and the causes of it: With

the signes howe to knowe

and foresee the same.

Cap. ii.



Very many be the perylles,
daungers, and thronges,
which chaunce to women
in their labour, which also
ensue and come in dyuers

*Many peryls
chauncing to
women in their
labour.*

wayes, and for diuers causes, suche as
I shall here declare.

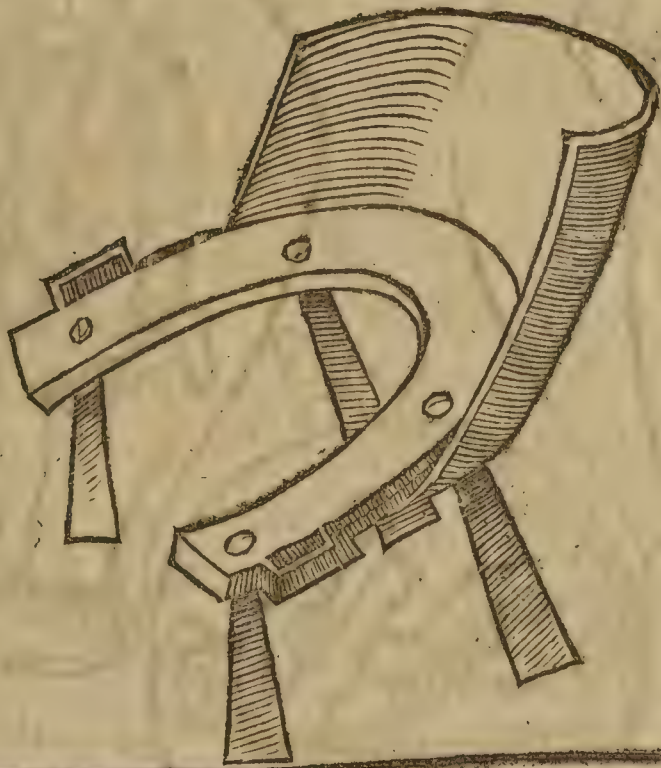
Fyrst when the woman that labour-
reth is conceaued ouer young, as before
xii. or. xv. yeeres of age (whiche chaun-
ceth sometyme, though not very often)
and that the passage be ouer anguste,
streate, or narrowe, other naturally, or
els for some disease and infirmitie, whi-
che may happen about the parte, as
apostumes, pulshes, pyles, or blysters,
and suche other. Through the which
causes, nature can not (but with great
dolour and payne) open and dilate it
selfe, to the expellyng and delyueraunce
of

The second booke.

of the chyld. And sometime the vesicke
or bladder, or other intrayles beyng a-
bout the Matric or wombe, be also a-
postumate and blystered, which beyng
greeued, the Matric or wombe likewise
for vicinitie and neighbourhead is gree-
ued with them, & that hindereth great-
lye the delyuerance. Also sometime in
the fundement are humiorrhodes, or
piles, and other pushes, chappynge or
chynes, which cause great payne. Also
hardnesse and difficultie or byndyng of
the belly, which thynges for the grieve
and paine that ensueth of them, causeth
the woman to haue litle power to helpe
her selfe in her labour.

Furthermore, if the partie be weake
and of feeble complexion, or of nature
very colde, or to young, or very aged, or
exceedyng grosse and fatte, or contrary-
wise to spare and leane, or that she ne-
uer had chyld before, or that she be ouer-
timorous and fearefull, dyuers, way-
warde, or such one that wyll not be ru-
led, remouyng her selfe from one place
to

THE BIRTH FYGVRES
THE WOMANS STOOLE
THE



II



I



THE BYRTHE

III



IIII



V



VI



VII



△ FYGVRES △

IX



VIII



X



XI



XII



THE BYRTHE FYGVRES

XIII

XIIII



XV



XVI



XVII



to another, all suche thynges causeth the labour to be muche more paynefull, cruell, and dolorous, then it woulde o^rtherwyle be. Also ye must vnderstand, that generally the byrth of the man is easier then the byrth of the female.

Item, yf the chylde be of a fuller and greater groweth, then that it may easily passe that narrowe passage, o^r contrarywise, yf it be so faynt, weake, and tender, that it cannot turne it selfe, o^r doth it very slowly, o^r if the woman haue two chyldren at once, other els that it with the whiche she laboureth, be a monster: as for example, yf it hath but one bodye & two heades, as appeareth in the. xviij. of the byrth figures, such as of late was seene in the dominion of Werdenbergh.

Agayne, When it proceedeth not in due tyme, o^r after due fashon, as when it commeth forth with both feete o^r both knees togeather, o^r els with one foote onely, o^r with both feete downewardeg, and both handes vpwardeg, other els (the whiche is most perilous)

The second booke.

sidelong, arselonge, or backlong, other
els (haupng two at a byrth) both pro-
ceede with their feete fyrst, or one with
his feete, and the other with his head,
by those and dyuers other wayes the
woman sustayneth great dolour, paine,
and anguythe.

Item, yf the woman suffer aborser-
ment, that is to say, bryng forth her
chylde in the .iiii. or .v. moneth after the
conception, whiche is before the due
tyme, in this case it shalbe great payne
to her, for so muche as in that tyme, the
porte of the wombe is so firmly and
strongly enclosed, that vnneth the poynt
of a needle may enter in at it.

Also if the chylde be dead in the mothers
belly, it is a very perillous thyng, for so
much as it can not be easily turned, ney-
ther can it welde or helpe it selfe to come
forth, or if y^e childe be sicke or weakned, so
that it can not for feeblenes help it selfe.

The which thing may be foreseene &
known by these tokes: If the woman
with childe haue been long sicke before
her

To knowe
whether the
chylde be
weake in the
mothers belly.

her labour, yf she haue ben sore lasked, if after her conception she haue had dayly and vnwontly her flowres, yf strayght after one moneth vpon the conception, her brestes yelde any mylke, yf the child styre not, ne mooue at suche tyme as is conuenient for it, these be argumentes & tokens that it shoulde be very weake. By what tokens ye shall knowe it is dead. I shal shewe you hereafter.

Also there is great perill in labouring, Perill in the
secondine. when the secondine or latter birth is ouer firme or strong, and will not soone rine or breake asunder, so that the child may haue his easy coming forth. And contrarywyle, when it is ouerweake, slender, or thin, so that it breaketh asunder before that the chylde be turned, or apt to issue forth, for then the humours whiche are collect & geathered together about this secondine or seconde byrth, passe away sooner then they shoulde do, & the birth shall lack his due humidities & moistures, which shoulde cause it the eyselyer to proceede, & with lesse payne.

The second booke.

Excesse of heate
or colde greatly
hyndreth the
labour.

The birth also is hyndered by ouer-
much colde, or ouermuche heate: for in
ouermuche colde, the passage and al o-
ther powers of the labouryng woman
be coarcted and made narrower, then
they woulde otherwyse be. Lykewyse
ouermuch heate debiliteth, weakeneth,
and faynteth both the woman and the
chylde, so that neyther of them in that
case can wel weld or helpe them selues
for fayntnesse.

And further if the woman haue vsed
to eat commonly such meate or frutes
which do exicate or drie, and constraine
or binde, as Medlers, Chestnuts, and
all sowre frutes, as Crabbes, Choke-
peres, Quinces, and suche other, with
ouermuche vse of Uergeus, and suche
lyke sowre sauces, with Rile, Myll, and
many other thynges, al this shal great-
lye hynder the byrth.

Also the vse of colde bathes after the
fifth moneth folowing the conception,
or to bathe in such water where Alome
is, Iron, or Salt, or any suche thynges
whiche

Whiche do coarcte and constrayne, or yf she haue ben oftentymes heauye and mournyng, or yll at ease, or yf she haue ben kepte ouer hungry and thurstie, or haue vsed ouer muche watch and wal-kyng: eyther if she vsed a litle before her labour thynges of great odour, smell or sauour, for suche thynges (in many niens opinions) attract and drawe vp-ward the mother or Matrix, the which is great hyndraunce to the byrth.

Also yf the woman feeles payne onely in the backe and aboue the nauell, and not vnder, it is a signe of harde labour: lyke wyse if she were wont in tymes pas-sed to be deliuered with great payne, is an euidence and lykelyhod of great la-bour alwayes in the birth.

Nowe signes and tokens of an expe-dite and easye deliuerance, be suche as be contrary to all those that haue ben reharsed before. As for example, when the woman hath ben wont in tymes passed easly to be deliuered, and that in her labour she feeles but litle thron-
 g

Tokens of easy
 deliuerance.

The second booke.

or dolor, or though she haue great paynes, yet they remayne not styll in the vpper partes, but descende alwayes downewardes to the neather partes or bottome of the belly.

And to be short, in all paynesfull and troublesome labours, these signes betoken and signifie good speede and lucke in the labour: vnquietnes, muche styrring of the chylde in the mothers belly, all the thronges and paynes tombling in the forepart of the bottome of the belly, the woman strong and mightie of nature, such as can well and strongly helpe her selfe to the deliuerance of the birth. And agayne, euill signes be those, when she sweateth colde sweate, and that her pulces beate and labour ouer sore, and that she her selfe in the labouring faynt and swone, these be vnluckie and morfall signes.

Howe a woman with chylde shall vse her selfe,
and what remedies be for them
that haue hard labour.

Capit. iiii.

To

ID succour and helpe them that are in such difficult perill of labour, as we haue spoken of before, ye muste obserue, kepe & marke those things that we shal (by the grace of God) shewe you in this Chapter folowynge.

First the woman with chylde muste kepe two diets, the one a moneth before her labour, the other in the very labouring. And aboue al thinges she must eschue & forbear al suche occasions which may hynder the birth, to the vttermost of her power, the whiche occasions we rehearsed in the Chapter before. But if there be any such thyng whiche can not be auoyded, forsomuch as it cometh by nature, or by long continuance and custome in this case: yet ye shal vse some suche remedies, the whiche may somewhat asswage it, molifie it, or make it more easy or tollerable, so that it hinder the birth so much the lesse.

But if it so be, that any infirmitie or disease, swelling, or other apostumatō

chaunce

chaunce

How the labour
may be made
more easy.

The second booke.

chaunce about the mother or the priuie part, or about the vesike or bladder, as the stone, the strangury, and such lyke, the whiche thynges maye cause suche straytnes and coarctation, that vnneth without great and horrible payne, the partie can be deliuered or discharged.

In these cases it behoueth such thynges to be loked vnto and cured, before the tyme of labour commeth, by the aduice of some experte Surgion.

Also if the woman be ouermuch constipat or bounde, most commonly she must vse, the moneth before her labour, suche thynges the which may lenifie, mollifie, dissolue, and lose the belly, as apples fyled with suger, taken fastyng in the mornynge, and after that a draught of pure Wyne alone, or els tempered with the iuyce of swete and very ripe apples.

Also to eat figges in the mornynge fasting, and at night, loseth well the belly. If these profite not, Cassia fistula taken iii. or. iiii. drams one halfe houre before dyner shall lose the belly without peril.

Againe

Agayne, in this case she must refrayne from all such thynges as do harden, re-
frayne, and constipat, as meates broy-
led or rosted, and ryce, hard egges, biese,
chestnattes, and all sowre frutes, and
suche lyke.

Also yf farther necessitie require, she
may receaue a clyster, but it must be ve-
ry gentle and easye, made of a pynt of
the broth of a chicken, or other tender
fleshe, thereto putting so muche course
suger or hony, as may make it reasona-
bly sweete, & halfe a sponefull of whyte
salt. Or for the poore woman maye be
made a clyster of a pynt of water, wher-
in hath ben sod mallowes or hollyoke,
with hony and salt, as before. She may
yse also some other easy and temperate
purgation, to molifie and lose her with-
all, as Mercury sodden with flesh in po-
tage, and diuers such other, or els a sup-
positer tempered with sope, larde, or the
yolkes of egges.

Things to lose
the belly.

And yf it chaunce that (the labour
drawing neare) she ware faynt or sick-
lye,

Witherwith to
comfort the
woman in her
laboure

The second booke.

type, then must ye comfort her with good comfortable meate, drynke, holisome and noble electuaries, and in this time must she do all such thynges the whiche can make her apte and sufficient to her labour, and to vse such thynges the which may laxe, open, and mollifie the nature and passage, so that the byrth maye the more freely proceede, and that chiefly in the yonger women. The elder women, for because that those partes in them be somewhat dryer and harder, therefore they must vse hoat and moyst thynges which haue propertie to lenifie and soupple, and that both in meate and drynke, and also in outwarde fomentations, bathynges, suppositoies, and annoyntmentes.

Anoyntmentes to
soupple.

Annoyntmentes wherewith ye may soupple the priue place, be these, Hennes grece, Duckes grece, Goose grece, also oyle Oliue, Lineseede oyle, or oyle of Fenegreke, or the viscosite of holyoke, and such other: & for drynke, let her vse good rype wine mixed with water: also
there

there muste be a consyderation in the
 dieting of the woman, that she maye
 vse suche thynges the whiche may moy-
 sten her, and not make her fatte. Con-
 trarywyse, let her auoyde such thynges
 the whiche shoulde exicate, drye, con-
 strayne, or coarct her, and that all the
 moneth before her labour. But about
 ten dayes before the tyme (yf she feele a-
 ny payne or greefe) let her vse every
 day to washe or bathe her with warme
 water, in the whiche also that she tarye
 not ouerlong in bathyng for weaknyng
 of her, and therein let her stande, so that
 the water come aboue the nauyll a li-
 tle, and also seathe in the water Ma-
 lowes, hollyoke, Camomell, Mercurie,
 Maydenheyre, Lyneseede, Fenegreke
 seede, and suche other thynges whiche
 haue vertue to mollifie and softe. And
 yf it be so, that for weakenesse of the bo-
 dy she may not endure this bathyng in
 warme water, then with a sponge
 or other cloth dypped in the foresayde
 bath, let her sokyngly washe her feete,
 her

Bathes to lose
 and gentlye to
 open the body

The second booke.

her thyghes, and her priuie partes, the whiche thynges shall greatly profite to her. But in suche tyme beware ye come not in the common hot houses, for they would cause you to be feeble and faynt, which were yll in this case.

Annoyntments
to supple.

And when ye are thus bathed or washed, then shall it be very conuenient for you to annoynt with the foresayde greces and oyles, your backe, belly, nauyl, sydes, and suche places as are neare to the priuie partes. Furthermore, it shalbe greatly profitable for her to conuey inwarde into the priuie parte these foresayde oyles or greces with a sponge, or other thyng made for the purpose, she lying vpright, the middes of her bodye most hyest, so that it maye the better remaine within her, and that chiefly yf the Matrix be drie, other els the partie very leane and spare.

Sweete fumes.

It shalbe also very profitable for her to suffume the nether places with Muske, Ambre, Gallia Muscata, which put on embres, yelde a goodly saour, by the
which

whiche the neather places open them-
selfe, and drawe downewarde.

Also as I sayde before, she must take
godd hede to her diet, that she take thin-
ges the which may comfort and streng-
then the body, feeding not ouermuch of
any thing, and to drynke pleasaunt and
wel sauouring wine, or other drynke, al-
so moderately to exercise the body in do-
ing some thing, styring, mouing, going,
or standyng, more then otherwyle she
was woont to do, these thinges further
the byrth, and make it the easier, and
this is the manner of diet the whiche
we aduise the woman to kepe the mo-
neth before her labour, or longer.

Another diet there is, the whiche she
ought to obserue in the tyme of labour,
when the stormes and thronges begyn
to come on, & the humours whiche yet
hitherto haue remained about the Ma-
trix or mother collected, nowe begyn
to flowe forth, and this maner of dyet
consysteth in two sortes. First that such
thinges be procured & had in redynesse,
whiche

What is to be
don whē the
tyme of labor
is come.

The second booke.

Whiche may cause the byrth or labour to be very easy. Secondly, to withstand, defend, and to put away (so neare as may be) the instant and present dolours. And as touching this poynt, it shalbe very profitable for her, for the space of an houre to sit styl, then (rising agayne) to go vp and downe a payre of stayres, crying and reaching so loude as she can, so to styre her selfe.

And also it shalbe verry good for a tyme, to retayne and kepe in her breath, for because that through that meanes, the guttes and intrayles be thrust together, and depressed downewarde. And it shalbe very good to receiue some medicine to prouoke the birth, of the which we wyll speake more hereafter.

Nowe when the woman perceiueth the Matric or Mother to waxe laxer or loose, and to be dissolued, and that the humours issue forth in great plentie, the shal it be meete for her to sit downe, leaning backward in maner vpright. For the whiche purpose in some regions

(as

(as in Fraunce & Germanie) the Mid-
wifes haue stooles for the nonce, which
beyng but lowe, and not hye from the
grounde, be made so compassewyle and
cane or holowe in the middes, that that
may be receyued from vnderneath whi-
che is looked for, and the backe of the
stool leaning backward, receyueth the
backe of the woman: the fashion of the
whiche stoole, is set in the beginning of
the byrth figures hereafter.

And when the time of labour is come,
in the same stoole ought to be put many
clothes or cloutes in the backe of it, the
whiche the Midwyfe may remoue from
one syde to another, accordyng as neces-
sitie shal require. The midwife her selfe
shal sit before the labouryng woman, &
shal diligently obserue and waite, how
much, and after what meanes the child
styreth it selfe: also shal with her han-
des, first annointed with the oyle of Al-
mondes, or the oyle of white Lillies,
rule and dyrecte euery thyng as shal
seeme best.

Also

The second booke.

The Midwyfe
must geue com-
fortable wordes
to the partie
trauoyling.

Also the Midwyfe muste instruct and comfort the partie, not onely refreshing her with good meate and drinke, but also with sweete wordes, geuyng her good hope of a speedefull deliuerance, encouragynge and enstomakyng her to patience and tollerance, byddyng her to holde in her breath so muche as shee may, also strekyng gently with her handes her belly aboue the Nauell, for that helpeth to depresse the byrth downewarde.

But and yf the woman be any thyng grosse, fat, or fleshy, it shalbe best for her to lye groueling, for by that meanes the Matrix is thrust and depressed downewarde, annoynting also the priue partes with the oyle of white Lillies. And yf necessitie require it, let not the Midwyfe be afrayde ne ashamed to handle the places, and to relaxe and loose the straighthes (for so muche as shall lye in her) for that shal helpe wel to the more expedite and quicke labour.

But this muste the Midwyfe aboue
all

The second booke. Fol. lxiij.

all thynges take heede of, that the com-
pel not the woman to labour before the
byrth come forwarde, and shew it selfe:
For before that tyme, all labour is in
vayne, labour as much as ye lyst. And
in this case many tymes it commeth to
passe, that the partie hath laboured so
fore before the tyme, that when she
shoud labour in deede, her myght and
strength is spent before in vayne, so that
she is not nowe able to helpe her selfe,
and that is a perrilous case.

To labour
much before the
due tyme, doth
but feeble the
woman, and no
thyng profite.

Furthermore, when the Secondine
or seconde byrth (in the which the byrth
is wrapped and conteyned) doth once
appare, then may ye knowe that the
labour is at hand, wherfore if the same
secondine breake not of his owne kynd,
it shalbe the Midwives part and office,
with her nayles easly and gentelly to
breake and rent it, or yf that may not
conueniently be done, then rayse vp be-
twene your fingers a peece of it, and cut
it of with a payre of sheares, or sharpe
knyfe, but so that ye hurt not the byrth

L. i.

With

The second booke.

With the cut. This done, by and by en-
sueth consequently the flux and flowe
of humours, of the whiche I spake be-
fore, and then next foloweth immediat-
lye the byrth.

But if it so channce that the Secon-
dine should be cut by the Midwife, and
all the watery part issued and spent be-
fore due time & necessitie should require
it, so that the priue passage be left ex-
cate and dry, the byrth not yet appea-
ryng, by this meanes the labour
should be hindered and letted. In this
case ye shall annoynt and molifie that
priue passage with the oyle of Whyte
Lyllyes, or some of the greases spoken
of before, first warmed, and so conueied
into the priue partes, the which thyn-
ges wyll cause the way to be slyppery,
souple, and easie for the byrth to passe.
But chiefly in these difficulties should
profite the whyte of an egge, together
with the yolke powred into the same
place, which shoulde cause it to be most
slypperie and slydyng, and supplie the
roomie

The second booke. Fol. lxxij.

roome of the natural humidities spent
before.

And if it be so, that the byrth be of a
great growth, and the head sticke in the
commynge forth, then must the Mid-
wyfe helpe all that she may, with her
hand fyrst annoynted with some oyle,
openyng and enlargyng the way, that
the issue may be the freer. Lyke wyse
must be done yf she beare two chyldren
at once. And all this is spoken of the
naturall byrth, when that fyrst procee-
deth the head, and then the rest of the
body ordinate, as ye may see in the
fyrst of the byrth figures folowynge.

The head pro-
ceedyng fyrst.

ii. But when the byrth cometh not
naturally, then must the Midwyfe do
all her diligence and payne (yf it may be
possible) to turne the byrth tenderly
with her annoynted handes, so that it
may be reduced agayne to a naturall
byrth. As for example: Sometyme it
chaunceth the chylde to come the legges &
both armes & handes downward, close
to the sydes fyrst forth, as appeareth

To turne the chylde
to the naturall
byrth.

The legges and
both handes
downe, proce-
edyng fyrst.

L. ii.

in

The second booke.

in the seconde of the byrth figures. In this case the Midwyfe must doo all her payne with tender handlyng and annoynting to receyue forth the chylde, the legges being still close together, and the handes likewise remayning, as appeareth in the sayd second figure.

Howbeit, it were farre better (if it may be done by any possible wayes or meanes) that the Midwyfe shoulde turne these legges comynge fyrst forth, upwardes agayne by the bellywarde, so that the head myght descende downwardes by the backe part of the wombe, for then naturally agayne and without peryll myght it proceede & come forth as the fyrst.

The thyrde of
the byrth
figures.

iii. Agayne sometime the byrth cometh forth with both legges and feete first, the handes beyng lyfted vp aboue the head of the chylde, and this is the perillous maner of birth that is, as appeareth in the. iij. of the byrth figures. And here must the Midwyfe do what she may to turne the byrth (yf it may be possi-

The second booke. Fol. lxxiii.

possible) to the first figure, and yf it wyl not be, then reduce the handes of it downe to the sydes, and so to reduce it into the seconde figure. But yf this also wyl not be, then receyue the feete as they come forth, and binde them with some fayre linnen cloth, and so tenderly and very softly lose out the byrth tyl all be come forth, and this is a very ieopardous labour.

iiij. Also sometyne the byrth cometh forth with one foote onely, the other being left vpward, as appeareth in the fourth figure. And in this case it behoueth the labouring woman to lay her vpryght vpon her backe, holdyng vp her thighes & belly, so that her head be the lower part of her body, then let the Midwyfe with her hande retorne in agayne the foote that cometh out first, in as tender maner as may be, and warne the woman that laboureth to styre and moue her selfe, so that by the mouyng and styrring, the byrth may be turned the head downewarde, and so

The fourth figure.

The second booke.

to make a naturall byrth of it, and then
to set the woman in the stoole agayne,
and to do as ye dyd in the fyrst figure.
But yf it be so, that notwithstanding
the mothers styrryng and mowryng, the
byrth do not turne, then must the Mid-
wyfe with her hande softly fetch out
the other legge whiche remainned be-
hynde, evermore takyng heede of this,
that by handlyng of the chylde, she do
not remouene it out of theyr place the
two handes hangyng downward to-
warde the feete.

The .v. figure.

v. Lyke wyse sometyme it cometh
to passe, that the side of the chylde com-
meth forward, as appeareth in the .v.
figure, and then must the Midwyfe do
so, that it may be returned to his natu-
rall fassion, and so to come forth.

The .vi. figure.

vi. Also sometyme the chylde com-
meth forth the feete forward, the leg-
ges beyng abroad, as in the .vi. figure,
and then must the Midwyfe see, that
the feete & legges may be ioyned toge-
ther, and so to proceede and come forth,
ever

The second booke. Fol. lxx.

euermore regarding the handes, as I warned you before.

vii. If it come with one of the knees The. ii. figure
or both forwarde, as in the. vii. figure,
then must the Midwyfe put up the
byrth, till such time as the legges & feete
come ryght forth, & then to do as afore.

viii. When the chyld commeth head The. viii. figure
long, one of the handes commyng out
and appearyng before, as in the. viii. fi-
gure, then let the byrth proceede no far-
ther, but let the Midwyfe put in her
hande, and tenderly by the shoulders
thrust in the byrth agayne, so that the
hand may be resettled in his place, and
the byrth to come forth ordynately and
naturally, as in the fyrst figure: But yf
by this meanes the hande come not to
his conuenient place, then let the wo-
man lye vpryght with her thighes and
belly vpwordes, and her head downe-
warde, so that by that meanes it may
be brought to passe, and then bryng her
to her seate agayne.

ix. But yf it proceede with both The. ix. figure
L. iiii handes

The second booke.

handes forwardes, then must ye lyke-
wise do as before, by the shoulders thru-
styng it backe agayne, vntyll such tyme
as the handes ly close to the sides, & so to
come forth, as appereth in the. ix. figure.

The. x. figure.

x. But When it commeth arswarde,
as in the. x. figure may be seene, then
must the Midwife with her handes re-
turne it agayne, vntyll such tyme that
the byrth be turned, the legges & feete
forwarde: other els, yf it may be so, it
were best that the head might come for-
warde, and so naturally to proceede.

The. xi. figure.

xi. And yf so be that it appeare and
come forth first with the shoulders, as
in the. xi. figure, then must ye layre and
softlye thrust it backe agayne by the
shoulders, tyll suche tyme as the head
come forwarde.

The. xii. figure.

xii. But When the byrth commeth
foorth with both the handes and both
the feete at once, as in the. xii. figure,
then must the Midwyfe tenderly take
the chylde by the head, and returne the
legges bywarde, and so receiue it forth.

xiii. And

The second booke. Fol. lxxvi.

xlii. And when it comnieth brestward The. xlii. figure
as in the. xlii. figure, the legges and han-
des bydyng behinde, then let the Myd-
wyfe take it by the feete or by the head,
whiche that shalbe most apt and con-
modious to come forwarde, returnyng
the rest vppward, & so to receiue it forth:
but if it may be hedling, that shalbe best.

xliii. Nowe sometyme it chaunceth The. xliii. figure.
the woman to haue two at a burthen, &
that both proceede together headlong,
as in the. xliii. figure, and then must the
Mydwyfe receyue the one after the o-
ther, but so, that she let not slyppe the
one, whylest she taketh the fyrst.

xliii. If both come forth at once with The. xliii. figure.
their feete forwarde, then must the Mid-
wyfe be very diligent to receiue first the
one, and then the other, as hath been
shewed before.

xlii. When the one comnieth head- The. xlii. figure.
long, the other footelwise, then must the
Mydwyfe helpe the byrth that is most
nearest the issue, and it that comnieth
footel long (if she can) to retorne it vpon
the

The second booke.

the head, as is spoken of before, takyng
ever heede that the one be not noysome
to the other in receyuyng forth of ey-
ther of them.

And to be short, let the Mydwife of-
ten tymes annoynt & mollifie the way
and passage with some of the foresayde
oyntmentes, to make the womans la-
boure so much the easier, and haue the
lesse trauayle and payne. And yf there
chaunce to be any Apostume or disease
about those places in this tyme, by such
annoyntyng to alaye and swage the
payne, so that for the time it may be the
lesse grieve to the partie, as I spake be-
fore also. And for them that be in this
case, it shalbe best to lye groueling, as I
sayd of the grosse, fatte and fleshy wo-
man.

Remedies and medicines by the whiche
the labour may be made more tol-
lerable, easie, and with-
out great payne.

Cap. b.

The

The thynges which helpe the birth & make it more easie, are these. First the woman that laboureth must eyther sytte grouelyng, or els vpright, leaning backward, according as it shall seeme commodious and necessary to the partie, or as she is accustomed. And in winter or colde weather, the chamber wherein she laboureth must be warmed, but in sommer or hot weather, let in the ayre to refresh her withall, lest betwene extreme heate and labour the woman faint and sowne. And furthermore, she must be prouoked to kneelyng, and that eyther with the powder of Eleborus, or els of Pepper. Also the sydes of the woman must be stroken downward with the handes, which thyng helpeth greatly & furthereth. And let the Midwyfe alway be very diligent, prouidyng and seeyng what shalbe necessary for the woman, annoynting the priuities with oyle, or other such greace as I spake of before, in this fashion.

Peane to
helpe and pro-
uoke the birth.

The

The second booke.

A good mollifi-
ng oymment.

Take the oyle of whyte Lyllyes, or Duckes grese, & with that temper two graynes wayght of Saffron, and one grayne of Muske, and therewith annoynt the secrete partes. If this profite nothing, then vse this suffumigation.

Take Myrrhe, Galbanum, Castorium, let those be beaten, and make lyke pylls of them, tempered together with bulles gall: then take a dram of these pylls, and put it on hotte coales, and let the woman receyue the fume and sauour of it vnderneath.

Another perfume: Take yelowc brymstone, Myrrhe, Madder, Galbanum, Oppoponacum, of ech lyke much, and temper al those together, making of them pylls, and with those also ye may make fume, to be receyued vnderneath.

Item, the fume of Culuer dung, or of Haukes dung, by puttyng to of Oppoponacum, is soveraigne for the same. All these fumes open the poores beneath, and causeth nature to be the freer in delyueraunce.

Also it is very good to dyp wooll in the iuyce of Rue, and the same to conuey into the secretes. Also the powder of Aristolochia rotunda, or the roote called Bothor martis, Ciclamini, or malum terre, or the seede of Stauisagre, any of these wrapped in wooll, and conueyed in warde, prouoketh and calleth forth the byrth.

Item, take Heleborus, Oppoponacum, and wrap them together in wooll, & minister them in warde, for that wyll bring forth and prouoke the byrth, whether it be alyue or dead. Also the
rynde

The second booke. Fol. lxxij.

rynde and barke called Cassia lignea beaten to powder, and tempered with wine & drunken, prouoketh well the byrth.

Item Asa fetida, of the bignes and wayght of a Pease, mingled together with Castorium, of the wayght of a dram, beaten together and tempered with wine mixt with water, and so drunken, is very good to prouoke the byrth. Also Canell drunke with wine is very good.

Item, take a scruple of Roses, with the water of the seede of fenegreke, Cicercula, Maydenhayre, all beaten together and sodden, and the oyle of blew flouedelyce, a small quantitie tempered therewithall, and then geue it to the woman that laboureth, and it shall prouoke the byrth greatly. And Cassia lignea and Asa fetida drunke with wine, be very good for the same.

Also Holyoke sodden in cunduite water and drunken, is soueraigne for the same purpose, and it is very good for her to washe her in the water in the which this Holyoke is decocte and sodden.

Item, certayne pylls the whiche make the labour easie and without payne.

Take Canell, or Cinamome, and Sauiue, of ech a dram, of Cassia lignea a dram and a halfe, of Myrre, Aristolochia rotunda, & Costus amarus, of ech a dram, of Storax liquida halfe a dram, & of Oppium the waight of. xii. graynes, beate these altogether, & fourme them into pylls, and geue vnto the woman two drammes of these pylls with

The second booke.

with two ounces of good olde wine.

Item, Saffron and Syler montanum p^{ro}longeth the byrth of any lyuyng thyng, yf it be drunken: howbeit to a woman geue neuer passyng a dram at once of Saffron, for greater quantitie shoulde greatly hurt.

Item, take .v. drammes of Sauine, of Rue or hearbe Grace one dragma and a halfe, of Juniper berpest two drams, of Asa fetida, Amoniacū, Madder, of ech two drams, of these make pylls, geuen to the woman in labour, with water in which is sodden Sauine and Penitriall, or els with the broth of Cicercula, and the iuyce of Rue shall helpe very greatly.

Item, take two drammes of Sauine, of Asa fetida, Amoniacum and Madder, of eche halfe a dram, these temper together in pylls, and geue her with wine one dram of the same.

Item, take of Aristolochia longa, Pepper, and Myrre, of eche lyke muche, confict them together with wine, and make pylls of them, and minister them with an ounce of water of the decoction of Lupines, these pylls be of suche efficacye and strength, that it alleuiateth and brayneth the byrth, it deliuereth the Matrice or Mother from all maner of byrth, be it alvye or dead.

Item, take of whyte Bedellium, Myrre, and Sauine, of eche lyke muche, temper these with Cassia lignea, and Hony, & make pylls of them to the byguesse of Peason, and of these pylls geue at ech tyme fyve to the labouring woman, which

which be of the same myght and strength, that the other pylls spoken of here next before are.

Item, take of Myrre, Castorium, & Storax, of eche one dram, temper them with Honey, and make pylls of it: these for this purpose excell and passe aliother, they be of suche vertue and strength in operation.

A plaster to prouoke the byrth.

Take wyldc Gowarde, and seethe it in water, in the same water temper Myrre, the iuyce of Rue, and Barley meale, so much as shalbe sufficient, stampe these thynges together, and make it plaster wyse, then lay it to the womans bellye betweene the Nauell and the nether part: This plaster shall helpe marueylously.

And although many other thynges there be which haue vertue and power to prouoke birth, and to helpe it, yet leauyng all such thynges for breuitie and shortnesse, we haue set here only a certayne, whose efficacie and power shalbe sufficient to this present purpose.

Howe

The second booke.

How the secondine or second byrth
shalbe forced to issue forth, if it come
not freely of his owne kinde.

Cap. v.



Here also sometime it com-
meth to passe, that the se-
condine which is wont to
come together with the
byrth, remayne and carry
behynde, and followe not, and that for
diuers causes. One is, for because per-
aduenture the woman hath ben so sore
weakened & feeblyshed with trauayle,
dolour, and payne of that fyrst byrth,
that she hath no strength remaynyng
to helpe her selfe, to the expellyng of the
second byrth. Another may be, that it
be entangled, tyed, or let within the ma-
tric (whiche chaunceth many tymes)
or that it be destitute of humors, so that
the water be flowen from it sooner
then tyme is, whiche shoulde make the
places more slipperie and more easie to
passe thorowe: Or els that the places
ouer weeryed with long & sore labour,
for

for payne contract or geather together,
and enclose them selfe agayne, or that
the places be swolne for anguythe and
payne, and so let the commyng forth of
the second byrth.

But to be short, of whatsoener cause
it be thus stopped, the Midwyfe in any
wyse must fynde suche meanes, that it
may be vnloosed and expulsed. For o-
therwyse, great inconueniencie shoulde
chaunce to the partie, & specially suffo-
cation and choking of the Matric, whi-
che also must so much the more be taken
heede to, for because the second birth re-
tayned and kept within, wyl soone pu-
trifie and rot, wherof wyl insue ill noy-
some & pestiferous vapours ascendyng
to the hart, the braynes, & the midriffe,
through the which meanes the woman
shalbe short winded, faint harted, often
soundyng, & lying without any maner
of mouyng or styrryng in the pulces:
yea, and many tymes is playnely suffo-
cated, strangled, and dead of it.

Wherefore that none of these thinges
happen

The second booke.

happen, With all diligence and payne it must be provided that the secondine be expelled.

Retention of
flowes for
weakenesse.

If retention of it come by weakenesse of the labourer, through long trauayle, then must she be recomforted & strengthened With good comfortable meats and Drinks, Which may enhart her, as broth made of the yolke of Egges, or With good olde wine, and good fat and tidie flesh, or Birdes, Hennes flesh, Capons, Partridge, Piggins, and such lyke.

And yf retention of this secondine come, because the place is contracte together agayne, eyther els that the Vagina is swollen for long paine: then must be vsed such thynges to prouoke it out, the which doo make the way slypper, supple, & easie for it to proceede, With the oyles of oyntnientes spoken of before, as oyle of white Lillies, of Maiorum, and of blewe Lillies.

Item, the beries of Juniper, or Galbanum, beaten to powder & drinke With luke warmed wine, wyl cause the same
to

to issue out.

Item, Sothernwood, or els Peneral
sodden in wine, and the decoction drun-
ken, is of the same vertue.

Item, to suffume the secretes with
the perfumes written of before, is good
for this purpose, and the vapour of the
water in which Mallowes, Holyoke,
and Beresfoote be sodden, receyued be-
neath, is lyke good.

Also to washe that partes in water
in which is sodden Branne, or to holde
a lytle bagge full of sodden Branne to
the place, and therewithall to soke the
place, is very profitable.

But yf the retention of the secondine
come by reason that it is entangled or
fastened in some place of the Matrix, so
that it wyll not resolue ne loose: then
make a fume vnderneath of brimstone,
Juie leaues, and Cresses, or els of Cres-
ses and Fygges.

Also of all odoriferous and sweete
smellyng thynges, as Ambre, Muske,
Frankencense, Gallia Muscata, and confec-
tion

M. ij.

The second booke.

tion neare, the which saours and perfumes put on the embers, must be so closely receiued vnderneath, that no part of the smell do ascende to the nose of the woman. For to the nose shoulde the saour of nothing come, but only of suche thinges the which stinke, or haue abhominable smel, as Asafetita, Castoriū, mans heare or womans heare burnt, Peccokes fethers burnt. Item, in this case it shalbe very good to make a perfume vnderneath of the houe of an asse, which thinges although they be of yll saour, yet they be of such nature and efficacie, that they occasionate not only the setondine, but also dead byrthes to proceede and come forth out of the Matrix.

And in this case also let the woman holde her breath inwarde, so muche as she can, for that shall dryue downward such thynges as be in the body to be expelled.

Item, let her be prouoked to sneese with the pouder of Eleborus or Pepper put in the nose, holding her mouth and
nose

nose so close as may be.

Also the oyntment whiche is called Vnguentum Basilicon, conueyed into the matrix, is very good, for it molifieth the place, and draweth out the secondine perforce, the whiche so done as it is expelled, infuse the oyle of Roses into the same matrix. Item, Rose water tempered with a quantitie of the powder of Holyoke, and drunke, is good to expell the secondine.

And yf it be so that any part of the secondine do appeare, let the Midwyfe receyue it tenderly, loosyng it out fayre and softly lest it breake, and yf ye doubt that it wil breake, then let the Midwife tye that parte of the whiche she hath handfast, to the womans legge or foote, not very strayght lest it breake, neither very laxe lest it slipp in agayne, and then cause her to sneese. Now yf the secondine tary or sticke, so that it come not quickly forwarde, then loose it a lytle and a lytle very tenderly, wreathyng it from one syde to another, tyl such tyme

M. iij.

as

as it be gotten out, but euer beware of violent and hasty mouing of it, lest that with the seconde byrth ye remoue the Matric also.

And yf in this meane whyle the woman faynt oz sowne by reason of great payne ensuyng of the takyng away of this secondine, then must ye minister such thynges to her the which comfort the head and the hart, as be electuaries which are confect with Muske, Ambre, and the confection of pretious Stones, as Diamargariton, and suche other. Also suche thynges the which comfort the stomacke, as Diagalanga, Dia cinamomum, and such lyke, which are alway in a redynesse at the Apothecaries, the which also she shall receiue with wine.

Item, to remoue the secondine, & to expellit, take Rue, Horehounde, Sothernwood, and Motherwortt, of eche lyke quantitie, and then take so much of the oyle of Lillies, as may be sufficient to stepe, moysten, and soke the foresayd hearbes,

The second booke. Fol. lxxij.

herbes, put all this togeather into a glazen potte, couered with such a couer, that it haue a lytle hole or vente aboue in the toppe of it, and sette this potte ouer a fyre of coales, so that it boyle a lytle whyle, then take it from the fyre, & set it vnder the stoole, where the woman sytteth, made for the nonce, hauyng a pype made for the purpose, of the which the one ende ye shall put into the vent or hole of the couer of the pot, and the other ende must the partie receyue into her body, and so to sit closed rounde about with clothes, that no vapoure or ayre goe forth of the pot, hauyng a fewe coles vnder it, to keepe it hotte: and thus sitte the space of an houre or two, tyll suche tyme as the seconde moue or begyn to proceede of his owne kynde.

And if it be so that ye profite not this wayes, yet then laye this plaster on the bellye betweene the nauell and the secretes, of the which we shall speake

¶. iij.

hereafter,

The second booke.

hereafter, the which is of such operation and efficacie, that it expelleth dead byrthes. If for all this the secondine come not forward, then leave it, and vse no more medicines ne remedies to that purpose, but let it alone, for within few dayes it wyl putrifie and corrupt, and dissolve into a watery substance, thicke lyke bryne or other fer mixed with water, and so issue forth. Howbeit, in the meane whyle it wyl put the woman to great paine in the head, in the hart, and in the stomacke, as we touched before.

How that many thynges chaunce to the women after their labour, and how to auoyde, defende, or to remedie the same. Cap. vi.

It is also to be vnderstanded, that many times after the deliuerance, happeneth to women other the feuer or ague, or swelling, or inflation of the body, other tumblyng in the belly, or els commotion or settelyng out of order of the Mother

ther or Matrix. Cause of the whiche thynges is sometymes lacke of due and sufficient purgation and cleyng of the flowres after the byrth, or els contrary: wyle ouermuche flowyng of the same, which fore doth weaken the woman: also the great labour and styrryng of the Matrix in the byrth.

Then as oft as it cometh for lacke of due purgation of the flowres, there must be ministred suche thynges the which may prouoke the same, whether it be by medicines taken at the mouth, or by lotion and washing of the feete, or by fumies, or odour, or emplastration, or by decoction of hearbes seruing to that purpose, or els by oyntmentes, and such other thynges, according as the person or the peryll doth require: of the which thynges, few or no women be ignorant. And ye must take diligent hede that she be exactly & vtterly purged. To this be agreeable all suche symples the whiche prouoke brine, and open the vaynes, makyng free way for the blood to passe
and

The second booke.

and sende the humoures and matter downward, as Motherwort, Asarum, Sauiue, Penericall, Parseley, Charuyl, Annis seede, Fenell seede, Juniper berries, Rue, Bay berries, Germaunder, Valerian, Tyme, Cinamome, Spike-narde, and such other. Al those thinges as they do prouoke & cause brine, so do they also prouoke and cause the flow-ers to depart. Howbeit, as neare as ye can, vse none of these thynges without the counsaile of an expert Physition, lest whylest ye helpe one place, ye hurt another: also to sneese, helpeth muche to this matter, & to holde in the breath, enclosing the nose and the mouth. Also fumigation made of the eyes of salte Fyshes, or of the houe of a Horse vnderneath, prouoketh the flowres. If ye profite not by this meanes, then being able to beare it, let her blood in the vaine called Saphina, vnder the angles of the feete, for this prouoketh flowres chiefly of all other thynges.

Likewise do, if the woman haue the

ague after her labour, for that commeth of like cause by retention of the flowres, and in the feuer let her vse to drinke water, in the which is decocte Barley beaten, or Cicer and Barley togeather, or water in which is sodden Tamarindi, or whay of mylke, and let her eate a cullis made of a Cocke, and sweete Pomegranates, for these thinges do prouoke the flowres, and mittigatech the immoderate heate, refreshing greatly the body, loosyng and opening such thynges the which before were constricted and cluded together.

For the ague in
women with
chylde.

If the body after labour do swell and inflate, then let her drinke water, in the which is sodden Cicer & Cummin, beaten together.

Item good olde wine with the electuarie called Diaciminum, or of the Trochiskes of Alkechenge, other wyse called Halicacabus.

Also in this case a clyster made of such thinges the whiche doo banquyshe and expell ventosities and wyndynesse, as Annis seede, Fenell seede, Rue the hearbe & the seede, Bay berries,

Com.

The second booke.

Commin. &c. Also a pessarie or suppositar made for that part of Aristolochia rotunda, Squinanium, Storax Liquida, Dorenicum, Zeduarina.

Agayne, if the woman after her labour haue frettyng and gnawynge of the guttes, and payne of the Matrix, and other secreete partes there about, then let her vse the vapoure and fume of suche thynges the whiche haue vertue to mitigate, swage, and alay the payne, as Mallowes, Holpocke, Fenegreke, Commin, Camomell, and Sauine. Of these also make emplaisters and bagges, the which may be applyed to the payned places.

Also to annoynt the places with Oleum sesaminū (yf it were to be had) or with oyle of sweete Almondes. And if no great heate do abounde in the woman, she may drynke Triacle, or Trifera magna, with wine in which is decoct Motherwort or Muggewort.

Also agaynst payne in the priuie partes, take Penirial, Policaria, fere leaues of Baye tree, seeth them togeather, and receyue the vapour vnderneath closely.

Item, take Rue, red Motherwort, Sothernwood, beate them together, & temper them with the oyle of Peniriall, and put altogether into a pot, and set it ouer the fyre a while tyl it be somewhat sodden together, & then take it of agayne, and put it into a litle round linnen bagge, made for the purpose, the whiche with these hearbes in it, ye shall conuey into the secretes.

Item, take Camomell and Lyne, of eche lyke
much

The second booke. Fol. lxxvi.

much. iiii. handfulls, bray them together, and seethe them with white wine, and then put it in a round bag of linnen, as before was done, and conuay it into the womans priue partes.

Item, let her drinke for the same purpose, two graynes of Muske with wine.

Item, take white Onions, and couer them vnder the hotte ashes, the which when they be well roasted, beate them togeather with freshe Butter vn salted, and make it in maner of a plaster, and then put it in a linnen bagge, and conuay it into the places as before: in the meane whyle perfuming the priue partes with whyte Frankencense and Storax.

If it be so that the woman be bexed about the backe and loynes after her labour, take Camomell and Muggewort, of eche two handfulls, of woorme wood, Sothern wood, of eche one handfull, of Motherwoort thre handfulls, of Cinamome and Nutmegges beaten small halfe on ounce, decocte all these thinges together, and in the water of this decoction, beyng warme, dyp a sponge or other linnen clothes, fomenting, looking, and streeking the backe with the same, and so do oftentymes, or els put all these foresayd hearbes togeather sodden in a bagge, and lay it plaster wyse to the backe.

If this profite not, take oyle Nardine, oyle of whyte Lillies, of eche an ounce and an halfe, to the which put a dram of Nutmegges beaten to smal powder, with this annoynt the backe.

Item, take oyle of Anece, oyle of Camomell,

The second booke.

of eche an ounce, Oyle of whyte Lyllys two ounces, or Ware two drams, dissolve all these together over the fyre, and therewith annoynt the backe.

What remedies
when the flow-
ers issue more
abundantly
then needeth.

But yf after the labour the flowres issue more vehemently, and in greater abundaunce then they shoulde, to the great effeblishyng of the woman, and inducyng of much langour and payne-fulnesse: then first shal ye note wheruppon it comieth, for the cause known, the disease may the more redyly be cured: and causes of it be diuers, but most especiall those that folowe, that is to say, Of muche abundant superfluous blood contayned in the whole body, or of muche commixtion of the cholericke humour and the blood together, by the which the blood is enfired and chauffed, & so distendeth, openeth, and setteth abrode the vaynes whiche descende to the Matric.

Also the blood being very thinne and waterish, for so it penetrateth, thryllet, and issueth forth the sooner. Also yf the vaines be very large, and receiue much blood,

The second booke. Fol.lxxvij.

blood, for in that case they sende forth
the more agayne. And if the Matrix be
vnnuyghtie and weakened, the baynes
lykewyse are weake and large, so that
they can not retayne nor withholde the
blood.

And if the body of the woman, or the
outwarde partes be very dence, close, &
compact together, so that the outward
poores be contract and shutte, in suche
wyse that no vapours or swet can issue
out at them, then this shall cause the yll
humours (whiche otherwyse woulde
passe through the pores in swet) to re-
mayne within the body, and there to
engender and encrease great fluxe and
abundaunce of matter, whiche procee-
deth with the flowres, & augmenteth
the quantitie of them.

Also yf the baynes of the Matrix be
(by some chaunce) open & flowe forth,
as yf the Matrix be perished or other-
wyse viciate : or yf it chaunce that
the woman haue hadde a fall, or hath
been thrust, or beaten, by all and any
of

The second booke.

of this meanes may come this inordinate fluxe of flowres.

Good counsel to
the woman.

Now seeing then that it ensueth by so manyfolde occasions and causes, it shalbe meete that womē in this case be nothing ashamed ne abashed to disclose their mynde vnto expert Physicians, shewing them euery thing in it, as they knowe wherevpon it shoulde come, so that the Physician vnderstandyng the womans minde, may the sooner by his learnyng and experience consyder the true cause of it, and the very remedie to amende it. And many thinges there be which cease and restraine this overmuch flowyng of flowres, both Electuaries, Confections, Trochiskes, Pouders, Clysters, Odours, Suffumigations, Bathes, Plasters, and Oynementes, of whiche for the loue of women I wyl here set forth the most principal and best.

First then to stinte and restrayne the outrageous fluxe of flowres, it shalbe very good to binde the armes strayght and strongly, and not the feete or handes, as some vnwyle men doo teach

teache, and then to set a ventose bore or cupping glasse with fyre (which is called booryng) vnder the brestes, without any scarification, laying also linnen clothes dypped in vineger on the belly betwene the Nauell & the secretes, conueying also into the places suche thynges which haue vertue to restraine blood, as the floure and rinde of Pomegranate, Ambre, Terra Sigillata, Bole Armeniacke, Sanguis Draconis, Hematites, the red Rose, white Frankencense, & Galles, al those thynges, or as many of them as ye can conueniently get, beate them to powder in lyke portion, and temper them with red wine, making of it a plaster, the which so tempered, put into a lytle rounde bagge, the quantitie of a mans thumb, the which she shall put into the priue partes.

Item, another plaster, to be ministred lykewyse.

Take of the blood stone, called Hematites, Bole Armeniac, of ech halfe an ounce, Sanguis Draconis, Licium, of ech two drams, Karabe, otherwise named Ambre, the cuppes of Acorues, Cipres tree Nuttes, floures of Pomegranate, of eche one dram, of the scales of Iron one dram and a halfe, Turpentine and Bitche lyke quantitie, or so much as shalbe sufficient to make a softe and somewhat liquid plaster, beate & bray all these together, temperyng it to a plaster, and then do with it, as ye dyd with the other before.

An oyntment for the same purpose.

Take oyle Martine, oyle of Roses, of eche foure ounces, Karabe, the scrappng of Iuery, the
 R. i. scrappng

The second booke.

scraping of a goates horne, red Corall, Terra sigillata, white frankencense, of eche (being wel and synely beaten) two drams, of whyte ware two ounces: all those tempered together, make them in an oymment, and the re with annoynte the wombe and the secretes.

A bath concernyng the same.

Take Worme wood, Plantaine the more and the lesse, the toppes of vines, freshe braunches of wyldc Ruberies, oz of the bramble, vnrype Damassons, Sloes, oz Bolasse, wyde Peares, Medlers oz Dispyles, of eche two handfulles, and red Rose leaues two handfulles, of Basies, of all sortes of Thystles, of eche two handfulles, of Cinckfoyle the leaues and rootes, Tormen-tyll the rootes, Corubyne, of eche an handfull: Also of Acorne Cuppes, a sawcer full, of Gaules, of Acornes pylls, of Burla pastoris, of eche two handfulles, beate all these to powder, cuttyng and brusing that that wyl not be beaten to powder, and seethe them togeather in rayne water, oz els in water in the which ten oz twelue burne flynt stones haue ben quenched. This done, let the woman bath her selte in this water vp to the shoul, and when she cometh forth of the bath, geue her to drinke two drammes of Electu-arium Athanasie, oz Miclete, with Plantaine water, oz if she be sore thirstie, with red wine.

And likewise ye may geue to her of these electuaries that folowe. Take good olde rose Sugar two ounces, of red Corall, burne Iuery, Bole Armeniacke, of eche two drams, of Hematites
three

three drammes, beate all these thynges together, tempering it with the rose Sugar, and let her receyue of it in the mornynge and evening, at eche tyme one dram, with fyre spoonefulles of Plantaine water, or els the water of Bursa pastoris.

Item, take of the stone Hematites, and rub it on a Barbers Whetstone, called a Bone, tyll the Bone seeme red, then washe it agayne from the Bone with Plantaine water, and so doo often tymes, buttill you haue a good quantitie of it, and euery mornynge let the woman drinke. iiii. or. v. spoonefulles of the same water.

Furthermore, there be at the Apothecaries Trochiskes, whiche helpe greatly in this case, as the Trochiskes of Carabe, or Ambre, and the Trochiskes of Bole Armeniacke, which must be ministred a dramme, or more of eyther of them, with. iiii. or. v. spoonefuls of Plantaine water.

Who that requireth further in this matter, let them aske counsaile of the Physitions.

Now if it be so that there be engendred any Apostume or other diseale in the priuie places after her labour, then must the Apostumes & diseales be cleansed, purged, and healed, the payne and ache of it mitigated & swaged with the iuyce of the berries or leaues of Nightshade,
R. ij.

The second booke.

Shade, and the iuyce of Plantane, also the oyle of Roses, so that all those thinges be tempered together, and the places annoynted therewith.

Item otherwyse. Take the white of an egge, womans myke, the iuyce of Purslaine, & temper all these together, and conuey it to the diseased place.

These medicines do refrigerate & coole the vehement heate wont to be in Apostumes. As for the rest, howe to open, drie, and clense suche Apostumations, ye must consult with some Physicion or expert Surgian.

Many tymes also it chaunceth that the fundement gutte commeth forth both in man and woman, and specially in women in this businesse, by reason of theyr great labour and stryving with them selfe: wherefore in this case it is the Wydownes part, with her hande warmed, and wet in white wine, to reduce it backe into his place agayne, the whiche yf she can not by this meanes, for because peradventure it be swollen, then

The second booke. Fol. lxxx.

then let her Dissolue Butter in Whyte wine Warmed, and therein dip Wooll, with the which Wrap the same gutte a Whyle, so doing oftentymes, tyll it be Swaged, that it may be returned in agayne. And ye may vse in the steade of White wine luke warme mylke.

And when it is thus returned and reduced into this place: Take Ware and melt it together with Masticke or Whyte Frankensence, then spreade it upon linnen plaster wyse, and lay it ouer the place where it came forth, byndyng it to, with a linnen cloth or roller, for parting of. And let this be done thus so often as she goeth to stoole, after that she hath doone, vntyll suche time that it be so setteled within, that it come no more out.

And yf ye wyll not occupie Ware: then dyppe wooll in the oyle of Masticke, or of Spyke Rard, and lay it vnto the place ouer the fundement, byndyng it fast vpon the place, as before.

Item another way. Washe and soke the gut with the water in which is decocte and sodden such thynges which ericate, dry, and constrainie or combynde: as Galles, Cipres nuts, flowres of Pomegranade, Ambre, Masticke, Frankensence, Sanguis Draconis, and when it is well washed & soaked with this water, then take the powder of an Hartes horne burnt, and strue it rounde about the gutte, and so restore it agayne

371. The second booke.

into his place.

Agayne, sometyne it commeth to passe, that after the womans labour, the Matrix is remoued out of his place, and appeareth forth: then let it be washed & soaked with the water in whiche be sodden these thynges folowynge.

Take of Cipres nutes, Spyke narde, Balau-
stium, Acorne cuppes, of eche an ounce, of Mel-
pylles, and burre wyld Beares, and burre
Apples, Plummes, and Damsons, or Bullade,
of eche an handfull. And such of those as be to be
powdred, beate them to powder, and the rest
deuyde and cut them small: then seeth them al-
together in rayne water, or els in water in the
which Steele beyng red hotte hath been oftent-
ymes quenched: and in the same water, let the
partie bathe her vp to the Mauell, or els dyppe
a sponge or a Locke of Wooll in it, and there with
washe and soke the same Matrix oftentymes.
Then euer with a faire cleane linnen cloth
wype it cleane agayne, and strew vpon it the
powder folowynge, beaten very small, and sear-
sed through sylke.

Take of frankensence, Carabe, Galles, Balau-
stium, Cipres nutes, Alooe, Antimony, Bole ar-
meniacke, Masticke, of eche like much: beate all
these to very fine powder, & strew the Matrix
with it: then tenderly reduce it into his place a-
gaine with warme linnen clothes binding it vp.
But

The second booke. Fol. lxxxi.

But yf so be that the Matric be swollen, so that by this meanes it wyl not be restored to his naturall place agayne: then dissolve Butter in whyte wine, as ye dyd before, and with the same soke it, vnto such tyme as it be swaged, and then reduce it.

Agayne, sometime it chaunceth that the womans Pauell through labour is dissolved, so that it openeth it selfe: then make a small tent of fine linnen, & annoynt it with this oynment that foloweth, & the same put into the Pauell.

Remedies for
the womans
Pauell when it
openeth it selfe,
for payne in the
labour.

Take white frankensence, & beate it to powder, & then temper it with the whyte of an egge, so that it be after the maner of liquid honye, with this annoynt the Pauell within & without, annoynting also the tent, the which being put in the hole of the Pauell, binde some cloth ouer it, to keepe it in his place.

Item, many times it chaunceth that thorow the great difficultie & thronges of labour, the priue part and the fundament become one, by reason of rupture and breaking of the same part in the despyuerance of the chyld, and that by that meanes the Matric descendeth and issueth downe, the whiche thying chaunceth sometymes, by reason that

Now that some-
tyme the priue
part and funde-
ment become
one.

R. iij.

the

The second booke.

the same place is very narrowe and also tender, and the byrth bygge & of great growth, so that it proceedeth with such violence, that it breaketh the way before it.

When this mishappe falleth, fyrst washe and soke the Matrix, and also reduce it to his place agayne, after the maner as I tolde you here immediatly before: then heale this bracke & wound by sowyng of both sydes of it together agayne with a sylken threede, as Chyrurgians do other woundes: and if that lyke ye not, then may ye cure it otherwyse without sowyng, thus.

Take two lytle peeces of linnen cloth, eche of the length of the wounde, and in breadth two fingers brode, spreade the litle clothes with some fast cleaving plaster, the whiche wyll cause the cloutes to stycke fast where they shalbe set: then fasten them, the one on the one syde of the rift, the other on the other syde, so that nothing appeare betweene the peeces of linnen in the myddes of them, but onely the clyft and ryft of the wounde in the breadth of a strawe. Then (this done) sowe the sides of the linnen together close, as before I byd you to sowe the skyn: and when they be thus styched together, lay a lytle liquid
Pitch

Pitche or Tarre vpon the same. And this done the lappes & sydes of the wounde vnder the linnen plaster wyl growe together agayne, & heale: and then may ye remoue your plasters.

¶ Item another way.

Take Camfely dried, and beate it to powder, also a lytle quantitie of Cinamome beaten to powder, ioyne them together, and strawe of this powder into the wounde, and without fault it shall heale.

¶ Of Abortementes, or vntimely byrthes, and the causes of it, and by what remedies it may be defended, holden, and eased.

Capit. lxx.



Abortement or vntimely birth is, when the woman is deliuered before due season, and before the fruite be ripe (as in the .iiij. .v. moneth) before the birth haue lyfe, and sometymes after it hath lyfe it is deliuered before it styre, being by some chaunce dead in the mothers wombe. Of the which thynges there be many and dyuers causes.

Many causes of vntimely byrthes.

Fyrst, sometymes the mouth of the
Matrice

The second booke.

Matrrix is so large & ample, that it can not conueniently close it selfe together, neither conteine the feature or conception: Or els it may be so corrupted and infected with viscos, slymie, flegmatike, and other waterysh humours, that the cauitie or holownesse thereof is therby made so slyppery, that the feature conceived can not there remayne, but slyppeth and slydeth forth agayne. Also sometymes the Matrrix is apostumated and sore, so that for payne it can not containe the conception.

Item, sometymes the Cotlidons, that is, the vaines by the which the conception and feature is tyed and fastened in the Matrrix (thorowe the which also the feature receyuech nourishment and foode, as is declared in the fyrst booke) be stopped with viscos & yl humours: or els swollen by inflation, so that they breake, by the whiche meanes the feature destitute of his wont nourishment, perissheth & dyeth, and that most commonly in the seconde or thyrde moneth after

after conception. wherefore Hipocrates sayth: All suche women whiche be impregnate or conceived, being of a meane state in their body (that is to say, neyther to fat or grosse, ne to spare or leane) if it chaunce any such to aborte in the seconde or thyrde moneth (no other euident cause appearynge) knowe ye for certayne, that it ensueth for because the Cotidons be oppiete, stopped, and stuffed with yll humours, and be swollen and puffed therewith, that they breake, and so consequently the feature dyeth for fault of foode.

Item, abortement sometyme cometh by reason that some of the places about the matrix be diseased & greued, as if Intestinum rectum, which is called the Fundement gut, be vlcerate, hauing the pyles or hemorroides, or the visicke or bladder be swollen or encombred with the stone, the strangury, or other euill. In these cases though the great labour and paine the which the partie hath in endeuorynge & enforcynge her selfe other to

Abortement by reason of some greife about the Matrix.

The second booke.

to stoole, or to make water, be engendered great motions downward, whereby many times the handfastnesse of the Cotilidons is broken.

Aborcement by
Tenasmus.

Also aborcement may come of a disease called Tenasmus, the which is when one hath ever great desyre and lust to the stoole, and yet can do nothing, nevertheless the parties greatly doo enforce and payne themselves to it. And as Hipocrates sayth, the pregnant woman which hath Tenasmus, for the most part abhorseth, that is to say, bringeth forth her chylde out of tyme.

Aborcement
through the
cough.

Item the cough, yf it be greivous, causeth the same. And as the forenamed excellent Physicion sayth: suche as are very spare and leane, and brought low, evermore lightly do abort: for because that all the meate and foode the which they receyve, turneth to foode, nourishment, and restauration of theyr owne bodies, and so is the conception destitute of foode: Wherefore necessarily it dyeth.

Item,

Item, this chaunce also commeth by ouermuch bleeding at the nose, or other where, or issuing of the flowres immoderately. And so sayth Hypocrates, yf the woman yeeld flowres after her conception, it can not be that the feature doo long proue, the whiche saying must be vnderstand, yf they flowe vehemently, or that the partie be weake and very spare, of if it be after the thyrde moneth, for it may be well, that in the fyrst and seconde moneth flowres may issue, and yet no daunger. For as yet lytle foode & nouryshment satisfieth the conception for the finalenesse thereof.

Item, to be let blood may be the cause of aborcement, whiche must be vnderstande in suche as haue but litle store of blood: but such as haue great copy and plentie of blood, may without any peryll (if any vrgent cause require it) be let blood, so that it be after the fourth moneth, and before the seuenth. Howbeit, I would that none should be let blood, except some great and wayghtie cause
dyd

The second booke.

dyd require it.

Item, it may come by takyng of some strong purgation before the fourth moneth; and after the seventh moneth.

And if it be so that any necessitie do so require that she must needes receyue a purgation, let it be done betweene the fourth and the seventh moneth after the conception, for then may it be with least peryll. And see that the purgation be very gentle and easie.

And this may come by reason of a continuall fluxe, be it blooddy or otherwyle, and specially yf the woman be weake & spare, for by that meanes the conception is greatly weakened and perished. And ouermuch vomityng may be cause of aborcement, for by ouermuch galpyng & reachyng vpwordes, the Cotlidons may be broken, and so the feature to peryshe.

Item, ouermuch famine or hunger, and also sharpe and feruent sycknesse may be the cause thereof, as the pestilence, apostume in the brest, and sodaine pallsie,

The second booke. Fol. lxxv.

palsie, the falling liknesse. &c. Also ouer-
much drunkennes, and excelle feeding
& surfetting, by the which the byrth
is suffocate and strangled in the belly,
and the foode corrupt for lacke of due
digestion.

Item, if the birth be sicke by any out-
warde or inwarde cause, or yf the Se-
condine in the which the feature is con-
teyned, do breake before his tyme, and
the humours and waters of the same
flow & issue forth, causing the place to be
slippery, and so the byrth to slide away
butimely: or yf the mother haue taken
very great cold, or ouer great heat, whi-
che weakeneth both mother and child.

And therefore ought women with
chylde to excheue much bathing or go-
ing to the hot houses in theyr teenyng,
for that may do hurt three wayes.

Fyrst, that it kyndleth or enflameth
the ayre or breath conteined in the body,
and so styfleth the childe, and sometime
the mother to.

Secondly, that it relaxeth, dissolueth, &
looseth

The second booke.

looseth the Cordons, and so maketh the byrth to issue forth. Thirdly, that the viter heate of the bath, encreaseth the inwarde heate of the body : in so much, that the byrth not beyng able to sustaine and abyde the heate, naturally proceedeth for refrigeration & cooling : but in the tyme, or about the tyme of labour, she may vse bathes, as I declared before, for the redyer and more expedite deliuerance.

Cause of a
borcement by
mutation of the
weather.

Item, the intemperancie and mutation of the ayre and weather, may be cause of aborcement. For (as Hypocrates wyrteth) Whensoever the Winter is hot and moyste, and the spryng tyde after colde & dry, suche women in that spring tyde may soone & of a lyght cause haue aborcement : Or yf they aborce not, yet they shalbe deliuered with great paine, and the byrth shalbe very weake & sicklye, so that it shall dye strayght, or yf it dye not by & by, it shall proue but very slenderly. The cause of the which thing is this.

For

The second booke. Fol.lxxxvi.

For when that suche wynteryng chaunceth, the hot and moyst weather heateth and moysteth the womans body, and by that the body is opened, vnloosed, & resolved, no lesse then though she were euery day bathed, and bypon this when the spryng time commeth, yf it be colde and drye, findyng the body open and vnloosed after suche sorte, the colde entereth and pearceth the bodye the sooner and the more vehemently: & the byrth feelyng the sodayne colde and chaunge of weather, pineth alway, and dieth in the Mothers belly, or anone after it is deliuered: or yf it lyue, it lyketh not, nor proueth not, and great payne shall it be to keepe lyfe in it.

Item, aborcement may happen by ouer muche styring of the body in labouryng, daunsyng, or leapyng, or by some fall or thrust agaynst some wall, or beating, or by some sodaine anger, feare, dread, sorowe, or some sodaine and vnlooked for ioy. Thus haue I rehearsed all the causes of the whiche moſte com-

Di

monly

The second booke.

monly maye ensue aborcement or vntymely byrth, the whiche no doubt is much more greefe and paine to the woman, then the very natural labour, for such thynges as chaunce to man or woman contrary to nature, or before nature doth require it, is farre greater greefe, then the same happenyng and comyng in his due season.

Signes wherby ye may foresee aborcement.

Tokens to foresee aborcement.



When the woman shall labour before her tyme, these signes are wont to goe before. Fyrst her brests which before were hole, sounde, & full, shall begin to waxe lesse, to fal, and to flagge, and then ever for the most part aborcement foloweth. But if it be so that she go with two children at once, if one of the brestes swage, which before was in good lyking, the other remayning sounde and safe, then loke of what side the brest is of, and the chyld of that syde is in peryll. wherfore Hippocrates wyteth, yf the ryght brest flake or flagge, the masculyne or male

male byrth is in peryl: yf the left, the female byrth, because that for the moſte part when there be two at once, the one is maſculine, and the other feminine: the man lyeth in the ryght ſyde, and the woman in the left moſt commonly.

Alſo another ſigne of aborcement is: When the woman hath great paynes and dolours of the Matrix, and that ſhe begyn to waxe redde in the face, and all partes of the body to ſhake & tremble, as though it were in a fever, or the palſie in the head. Item when ſhe feeleth great ache in the inner part of the eyes toward the braines, the reſt of the body taken as it were with a weermes, without any outward apparant cauſe why: theſe thynges portende and ſignifie aborcement to be at hande, ſpecially yf at the ſame tyme the flowres iſſue alſo.

Item yf the womans body do ſwell and inflate with a certayne hardneſſe or ſtiffneſſe, and that ſhe feele ſtytches, and as it were ventofitie or wynde, runnyng from one ſyde of the bodye

The second booke.

to the other, and yet the belly notwithstanding standyng, beyng nothyng the more ponderous or wayghtie, and that the same inflation do persist and continue anye whyle, the woman takyng and eatyng suche thynges whiche haue vertue to discusse and vanquish ventositie and wyndynesse: this thyng I say dooth betoken peryll of aborcement through ventositie and inflation, and that cheefely about the thyrde or fourth moneth after the conception.

Thus haue I sufficientely declared euident and sufficient signes, whereby may be prouided and foreseene the aborcement before it come. Nowe wyl I shew you the remedies wherby it may be auerted and let.

Remedies
whereby to a-
uoyde abor-
cement.

The cheefe remedie to auoyd aborcement is, to shun al such thynges whiche may be cause of it, the whiche I haue competently entreated of alreedy: but yf ye feare aborcement, because that the mouth of the matrix be ouer ample and large,

large, then must ye vse suche thynges whose operation is to contrahē, constrainē, and bring together, as Bathes, Fumigations, Oyntmentes, Plasters, Oodours, and suche lyke, of the whiche I haue spoken before, and such thynges the which repressē and stynte the flowērs flowyng ouer muche after the byrth.

Agayne, yf ye feare this peryll, because the mouth of the Matrix is moyst and slipperie, other because that the collidons be replete and fulfylled with viscus humours, and with inflations or ventosities: then may ye defende it by vsing of suche thynges whose qualities be to purifie, clense, exicate, or drye, and to repressē ventosities, whereof also we haue made mention here before.

Howbeit, in all this matter, let not to make some expert phisition of your counsaile, yf ye may haue suche one, for because that many suche thynges come, and not all by one way or meane.

And yf ye doubte peryll for because

The second booke.

that the Matrice or other places about
be infected, exulcerated, or apostumate,
or hauyng the stone or strangury, and
suche other thynges: then aske and vse
the aduise of some well learned medi-
cine, and he shall shewe you howe all
thynges shalbe recured.

If agayne ye feare aboꝛtment be-
cause the partie is very weake and low
brought, then let her feede on such thin-
ges the whiche moysten and nourryshe
wel or fatten the bodi, as Capons fleshe,
Kid, Lamme, young Cleale, Partridge,
and such other.

Agayne, yf the woman be taken with
any sharpe and fell disease, then let her
be cured of the same as shortly as can
be, with such thynges the which apper-
tayne to the curyng of such disease: or yf
she haue susteyned any long famine or
hunger, then let her be fedde with good
meates and drinckes moderately taken:
and yf she haue surfatted by ouermuche
eatynge and drynkyng (as now a-
dayes most commonly people do) then
let

let her abstayne for a tyme, and if it may be convenientlye done, let her receaue some easy and gentle medicine, whiche maye alleuiate and lyghten her of her surfettyng burthen, especially by vomitting, for the whiche purpose, geue her halfe a pynt of water luke warme, wherein hath ben sodden two sponesfuls of clarified hony, and then afterwarde yf it come not of it selfe, with her fynger or with a fether put into her throte, let her prouoke her selfe to vomite.

Nowe yf it be so that the woman abounde in blood, then shall it be very good a litle to let her blood, both for her selfe, and also for the birth, whiche thowwe ouer muche aboundaunce of it, myght happen to be suffocated & strangled: of the whiche thing also I haue spoken largely before.

Furthermore, yf the woman feare aborcement, by reason of continuall cough, or ouermuche vomite and parbrakyng, or the fluxe, or of the disease called Tenasmus, or of ouermuche issuyng

The second booke.

of blood, whether it be by the nose, or other partes of the body, aske the aduise of a Physitian for remedie, yf for the fragilitie, tenderneſſe, and bracke of the ſecondine, ſhe feare this aborcement, for becauſe that in this caſe the ſecondine ſhall not be able to holde and contayne the byrth. As for this, there is no other medicine to defende it, but only that the partie take heede that ſhee hurt not her ſelfe by ouermuch mouyng or ſtirryng, as by labouryng, daunſing, runnyng, ſtandyng, faſte goyng, or carryng of ponderous and wayghtie thinges, or lyftyng of the ſame. And to be ſhort, let her with all waryneſſe take heede and be diligent that ſhe excheue and abſtayne from all ſuche thynges the which might cauſe and induce aborcement.

Of dead birthes, and by what ſignes or tokens it may be knowne, and by what meanes it may alſo be expelled. Cap. ix.

It

If I shalbe nowe conuenient for
 vs to speake of dead birthes,
 howe it shalbe knowen that
 they be dead, and howe they
 may be expelled from the mother.

Signes to
 know whether
 the child be
 dead in the mo-
 thers wombe.

Signes then that the byrth is dead in the mo-
 thers wombe, be these.

- i. First, yf the mothers brestes do so-
 denly flake, as I touched before.
- ii. If it moue it selfe no more, beyng
 wont before to styre.
- iii. If when the mother turneth her
 from the one side to y other, she feele it
 falling from thone side to the other like
 a stone, or a dead wayght.
- iiii. If her belly and nauyll begyn to
 waxe colde, which before was wont to
 be temperately hotte.
- v. If any stynkyng and fylthye hu-
 mours flowe from the Matrix, and
 cheefely after some fell disease.
- vi. If the womans eyes waxe holow,
 & that her colour chaunge from whyte
 to swart and dunne colour, and that
 her eyes and nose waxe astonyed, and
 haue

The second booke.

haue not their ryght vse, and her lippes
ware wanne.

bii. If beneath the Nauell and about
the secrete partes she feele great throng
& payne, the colour of her face chaunge
yng into worse and worse, otherwyle
then it was wont to do.

biii. If she haue appetite to eate suche
thynges whiche be agaynst nature, and
not wont to be eaten or drunken.

ix. If she be in her sleepe vexed with
bayne and terrible dreames.

x. If she be payned continuallye with
the strangurye, or that she enforce her
selfe much to the stoole, and with al her
power, and yet can not do any thing.

xi. If her breath begin to stynke, the
whiche thyng lightly happeneth two
or thre dayes after the birch be dead.

xii. If the handes put into very warme
water, and then layde on the womans
belly, and the childe stirre not, is a signe
that it is dead.

Of all these signes now, the more
that come together of them at one
time

tyne and in one person, the surer may
ye be that the birth is dead, the which
beyng once dead, all diligence muste be
hadde that it may be expelled out of the
Womans body.

But here must ye see agayne whether
it may be expelled, the Mothers lyfe sa-
ued or no: for sometyne it chaunceth
that the Mother dyeth withall, and
sometymes the Mother doth well and
prospereth.

Whether the Mother shalbe in perill
withall, or no, by these thynges shall
ye knowe. If the woman beyng in the
labour sowe or feare, as though she
were in a traunce: if her remembraunce
fayle her, and she were feeble and scant
able to moue or stirre her selfe: yf she
(called with a loude voyce) can aun-
swere nothyng at all, or els verye li-
tle, and that very softly, as though her
voyce began to fayle her: if she be inua-
ded or taken among in the labouryng
with conuulsion or shrynkelynge toge-
ther: if she refuse or cannot broke meate:
yf

To knowe
whether the moe-
ther shalbe in
perill or no.

The seconde booke.

yf her pulces beate very fast, the which signes whē ye see in the woman labouryng, it is an euident token that she shal not lyue long after her deliuerance, wherfore commit the cure of her to the handes of almyghtie God: but yf none of these signes doo appeare, then haue good hope, for the woman shall do wel, the byrth beyng once departed: wherfore geue all diligence to the expulsion of it, that the woman maye be deliuered of this dead burden, the whiche thyng maye be done by two wayes, eyther be medicines expulsive, or els be certayne instrumentes made for the nonce.

Two meanes
to expel the
dead birthes.

fyrst withoute instrumentes, with this fumigation. Take eyther the houe or dongue of an Asse, and put it on coles, and let the woman receaue the fume vnderneath.

Another.

Take the skinne of an Adder, Myrre, Castoriū, Brimstone, Galbanum, Oppoponacum, Madder that the Diers occupie, Pigeōs donge, or Hawkes donge, beate al these to powder, & temper the with Ore gal, & make pylls of it, eche the quantitie of a fylberde nutte, and then put one after another

another in the coales, and receiue the fume thorow a pype or conduite made for that purpose into the priuities.

Another. Take Encense, Oppoponacum, Galbanum, Brimstone, of eche like muche, beate them together, and temper them with Ore gall, and make pilles of them, and then of the same make fumigations as before.

A posion for the same purpose. Take Asafetida halfe a dram, of Rue three drams, of Myrre two drams, and beate them to powder, and geue to the woman at eche tyme a dram of this powder with white wine, or with water in the whiche Sauiue is sodden.

Another. Take Figges, fenegreke, Organie, and seethe them in water, the whiche geue vnto the woman to drynke: for this drynke wyll engender lubricitie and slyppernesse in the neather partes, and vse also some of those thynges which haue vertue to prouoke the byrth, whereof we entreated before.

Item, certayne pessaries or suppositaries concerning the same. Take Gumme, Ammoniacke, Oppoponacum, Heleborus niger, Staphisager, Aristolochia longa, and Colocinthis without his kerneles, beate all these thynges together, tempering them with Ore gal, and also with the iuyce of fresh Rue, then make a pessarie of wollen, and annoynt and wet the pessarie with the same, conueying it into the secrete places.

Item another. Make a pessarie of wollen, of the length and thickeesse of a fynger, and dyppe
it

The second booke.

it in the iuyce of Rue in the whiche is dissolved a quantitie of Scammonie, and doo with that pessarie as before.

Item, take Aristolochia rotunda, Savine, garden Cresses, of eche lyke muche, beate them to powder, and temper them with Oxe gall, with this annoynt a pessarie made and ordered as before is spoken of.

Item, yf the woman drynke the mylke of another woman, it wyll styre and expell the byrth.

Item, take of the iuyce of Dittayne, or of the powder of the roote of the same hearbe, two drams, and geue the same to drynke to the woman with wine, except she be in great heate, for then shal ye geue it her with luke warme water, and this shal expell the dead byrth without anye peryll of the Mother.

Item, take of Myrrhe foure drammes, of Cinnamon, Galbanum, Castorium, of eache two drams, of Oppoponacum, one dramme, all those beaten & tempered together with Oxe gal, make pilles of them, waying eche of them a dramme, and with the fume of those, perfume the neather partes, by this vapour the dead birth is brought forth, inflation and suffocation of blood is expelled,

Item, take of water Minte, Southernwood, Mugwurt, of eche a handfull, of Asphaltum halfe an ounce, of Madder, two ounces and an halfe, of Camomel, Horehounde, Fenegreke, of eche two ounces, see the al these thynges togeather in
raime

The second booke. Fol. xciii.

rayne water, in the which let the woman bath her selfe: then take of Hennes grece and Duckes grece, of eche foure drammes, to the whiche ad two ounces of oyle of Dyll seede, with this oyntment annoynt the womans head commyng out of the bath, then take Date stones, and beate them to powder, a dramme and an halfe, with a scruple of Saffron tempered togeather with whyte wyne, the whiche let her immediatlye drynke after she come forth of the bath.

Item, take Oppoponacum, and make thereof a pessarye, the quantitie of a fynger, conuey it into the priuities, this expelleth the dead byrth.

Item, take of Galbanum a dram or somewhat lesse, of Goates mylke an ounce and a halfe, or two ounces, in the whiche the Galbanum beyng dissolved, geue it to the woman to drynke.

Item, a plaster for the same. Take Galbanum beaten and tempered with the iuyce of Motherwort, and of this make a plaster by puttyng to of waxe a certayne quantite: then take a linnen cloth of suche length and breadth that it may couer al the belly vnder the Nauell to the priuities, from one syde to the other, on this cloth spreade this plaster of the thiknesse of a strawe, and lay it to the belly.

Item, take the Triacle whiche is called Diacassarum, & geue of it to the woman for to drynke, and it wyll expel the dead byrth.

But yf all these medicines profyte not, then
must

The second booke.

musste be vsed more seuerer and harde remedies with instrumentes, as hokes, tongues, and suche other thynges made for the nonce. And fyrste the woman musste be layde a long vpryght, the middle parte of her bodye lying hyer then all the rest, accompanied of women assisting her about, to comfort her, and to keepe her downe, that when the byrth is plucked out, she ryse not withall. Then let the Midwyfe annoynt her lefte hande with the oyle of whyte Lillies, or other that may make it supple and smothe, and holding out her fingers, shutting together her hand, let her put it into the Matrix, to feele and perceyue after what fashion the dead byrth lyeth in the Mothers wombe, so that she may the better put in hokes, and suche other instrumentes to plucke it out withall.

If so be that it lye the head forwarde, then fasten a hooke eyther vppon one of the eyes of it, or the roose of the mouth, or vnder the chin, or on one of the shoulders, whiche of these partes shall seeme moste commodious and handsome to take it out by, and the hooke fastened, to drawe it out very tenderlye for hurtyng of the woman.

But if it lye the feete forwarde, then fasten the hooke on the bone aboue the priue partes, or by some rybbe, or some of the backe bones, or of the brest bones: and when this hooke is thus fastened, the midwyfe may not by and by drawe and plucke at it, but holdyng it in her lefte hande

hande, let her with her ryght hande fasten another in some other part of the byrth, ryght agaynst the fyrst, and then tenderly let her drawe both together, so that the byrth may proceede and come forth on both sydes equally, mouyng it from one syde to another, tyll ye haue gotten out altogether, and nowe and then to helpe it in the comynge forth with the foresynger well annoynted, yf it chaunce to stycke, or to be lette any where: and as it cometh forth, alway to remoue the hookes farther and farther on the dead byrth.

Agayne, yf it chaunce that one of the handes only of the byrth do appeare, and that it can not conueniently be reduced and returned vwarde againe, by reason of the narrownesse of the place, then bynde it with a linnen cloth that it dyspe not by agayne, and then to plucke it outwarde vntyl such time that the whole arme be out, and then with a sharpe knyfe cut it of from the body: and euen so do yf both handes appeare fyrst at once, or one legge, or both, yf they can not be returned backe to be otherwyse taken out conueniently. As ye cutte the armes from the shoulders, so lyke wyse cuttyng the legges from the thighes, for the which purpose the Chirurgians haue meete instrumentes made for the nonce, with the which such legges & armes may soone be cut from the body. These partes beyng once resecte and cut from the body, then turne the rest, so that it may easely proceede, with as lytle payne to the mother as may be.

The second booke.

If it be so that the chyldes head be so swollen by inflation, swelling, or resort of humours, that it wyll not conveniently issue out at that narrow place: Then let the Midwyfe with a sharpe penknife cutte open the head, that the humours conteyned in it may issue and runne forth, and so the head to waxe lesse, able to be plucked out: But if it be so, that (not by any suche casualtie) the head be bygge but onely of a naturall growth, then must the head be broken in peeces, and the partes evermore taken forth with suche instrumentes as the Chirurgians haue redy and necessary for suche purposes.

Agayne, yf that after the head were come forth, yet the brest part woulde not folowe for greatnesse: Then must ye breake and cut lyke wyse that part, vnto suche tyme that it may be had forth. And euen so lyke wyse yf all the rest of the body shoulde be so swollen that it woulde not proceede ne come forth: then must it lyke wyse be broken in peeces, and so had forth.

Furthermore, yf by chaunce or disease it come to passe, that the mouth of the Matrix be excoriate or appostumate, so that the passage be made the narrower by that meanes, the dyer, and the more contract: then must ye fyrst studie and endeavour you to supple and ease the places by oyles and other greaces, suche as I spake of sufficiently before in the fourth Chapter, with bathes and fumigations.

Also yf the dead byrth come sydelong, then
must

must ye do what may be done to conuert and turne it to suche fasbyon, that it may most easily be brought forth. The Matrice and other secretes must be annoynted, perfumed, and hapoured with suche thynges the which may make it more ample and large. If it can not be thus had forth whole, then let it be cutte out by peece meale, as is before spoken of. And yf after this delyueraunce the flowres issue ouer vehemently, then vse suche thynges as haue vertue to restrayne them, of the whiche I haue spoken in the. vi. Chapter before.

But contrary to all this, yf it chaunce that the woman in her labour dye, and the chylde hauing lyfe in it: then shall it be meete to keepe open the womans mouth, and also the neather places, so that the chylde may by that meanes both receyue and also expell ayre and breath, whiche otherwyle myght be stopped, to the destruction of the chylde. And then to turne her on the left syde, and there to cut her open, and so take out the chylde. They that be borne after this fasbyon are called Cefars, for because they be cutte out of their mothers

belly: whereupon also the noble

Romayne Cesar the fyrst

toke his name.

The second booke.

In the last Chapter of this booke be briefly
recited certayne expert medicines, whiche be
most requisite to the chiefe purpose
entended in this present
booke. Cap. x.



As much as the principall en-
tent and ende of this booke is, to
shewe the meanes and medici-
nes whereby the womans la-
bour may be made the more ea-
sie : therefore here I wyll com-
pendiously set forth certayne medicines, oint-
mentes and emplasters, suche as shalbe suffici-
ent and moſte requisite to that purpose, and
suche agayne as hath been well experimented
and practised : The whiche also it shalbe conue-
nient (for them that may) alwayes to haue in
a redynesse agaynst theyr tyme of neede. For
although that Nature be the chiefe and head
doer in all this businesse (as in conception, bea-
ryng, and the byrth :) yet notwithstanding, me-
dicines many tymes do helpe, ayde, and fortifie
Nature, beyng sometime impedit and let, yea,
impotent and not able to do her office as should
appertayne.

When the tyme then of the womans labour
is come, yf she labour long and paynefully, and
yet the byrth do not proceede : then for the more
expedite and quicke deliuerance, geue her of
this medicine folowynge.

Take of the fynest Cinamome that may be
chosen

The second booke. Fol. xcvi.

chosen. iiii. drammes, and with a sharpe knyfe
fyrst shred it in very small peeces, and then beate
it to very fyne powder.

Item, of Saffron dyed by the fyre tyll it be
blackyshe, of Cassia lignea, fyne Reubarbe, Sa-
uine dried, Myrre, of ech of these seuen scruples,
of pure Muske. xvi. graynes, euery of these sim-
ples exquisitely by them selues powdered, & then
perfectly myxed in one, with. vi. oz. vii. droppes
of Maluese, temper the whole masse into lytle
roundels or trochiskes, eche waying a dramme.
And in tyme of neede at the womans labour,
geue her hardy the wayght of. vi. d. of these tro-
chiskes beaten into fine powder, with. iiii. spon-
fulles of Hylope water, and other. iiii. of good
wine secke.

This medicine is not onely profitable at this
tyme to prouoke the byrth, but also is notably
good to expell the after byrth, or any other suche
lyke matter in that place, hauyng neede of ex-
pulsion.

Item, yf neede do so require, it shalbe very
expedient to haue this emplaster folowynge in
a redinesse, the which spread abrode vpon a lyn-
nen cloth either els vpon leather, and so applied
to the bottome of the belly in as large maner
as may be, dilateth and openeth the pores of
that partes, amplifieth, enlargeth, & dissolurth
them, whereby that that is contained in the bel-
lye syndeth the freer issue, to the lesse greouaunce
of the mother.

Take of Emplastrum de Melliloto, of Diachilon,

p. iiii.

of.

The second booke.

of Oxyroceum, of ech two ounces, of the rootes of Asarum, of wyldc Peppe dyed, the leaues of Bemioim, of tosted Cummin, of eche two drams, of good Castorium. iiii. drams, of the oyle of Wyll one or two spoonefulles: such of these as are to be powdered, beate them fyne, and then ouer a soft fyre temper them altogether perfectly.

Item, the same emplaster may serue to be layde ouer all the boitome of the belly and the priue passage, to prouoke and drawe forth the latter or hynder byrth yf neede be: But yf that be not strong enough, then lay to this plaster following, which is of muche more efficacie, force, and strength.

Take of Galbanum, Ammoniacum, Seraphinū, Myrre, of eche an ounce, of Colloquintida, Heleborus niger, of eche two drams, of Castorium, Perethrum, & Storax liquida, of ech thre drams, of Turpentine and Petroleum, of eche foure drammes. Fyrt ouer a soft fyre temper the Turpentine, Petroleum, & Storax liquida, together, then thereto adde Colloquintida, Heleborus, Castorium and Perethrum, beyng fyrt well and fynely beaten to powder: after put to the Galbanum, Ammoniacum, Serapinum and Myrre, beyng fyrt dissolued in good Maluesey, and so take it from the fyre, and labour it with your handes. This plaster is of great effecte to prouoke the after byrth.

Item, vnset Leekes stamped and fryed with butter, and so layed plasterwyle to the belly serueth well for the same.

Item,

The second booke. Fol. xcviij.

Item, the leaues or flowres of Marygoldes drunke with whyte wine, expell the after byrth. Also the sayde leaues and flowres dyled, and at tyme of neede, kyndled with a ware candle, and the fume thereof receyued vnderneath into the priue part, prouoketh out marueylously the after byrth.

Item, a comfortable potion, to be taken after the deliuerance of the chyld.

Take of the sweetest garden Myntes, greene or dry, of the leaues of Baine, greene also or dry, of the leaues of Maioram, the rootes of fenell, the pyth taken out, the flowres of Buglos, of Rosemarie, of Ruds, of Borage, and of dyled red Rose leaues, of eche of these halfe a handfull, more or lesse as it pleaseth you, of Cloues and Gale brused a lytle, the wayght of two pence, of Cinamome syedde in small portions the wayght of vi. grotes, knyrt all these together in a cloute or lytle linnen bagge, and hange the same bagge in a quart of Borage water the space of a day and a nyght: then take out the sayde bagge, and reserue the water, of the which take one halfe, and the other halfe of pure wine Secke, or els Muscadell: and beyng myxt together, put thereto a lytle of the conserue of Barberies, conserue of Borage flowres, conserue of Rosemarie flowres, and drynke hereof euery day the space of foure or fyue dayes, at once foure spoonefulles of the water, and other foure of the foresayde wyne. And this potion shall both comforte the woman, and also helpe

The second booke.

greatly to the expulsion of all noysome thynges to be expelled.

And here it is worthy to be noted, that where as it is a common vsage to geue often to women in their chyldbed caudels of Otemeale, thynkyng and saying thereby the woman to be scoured, whereas in deede the sayde Otemeale is a notable bynder and dryer: Therefore ye shall vnderstande, that the ryght vse thereof is, to geue it to such as haue already been well and sufficiently scoured and cleansed from theyr after byrth, and other thynges to be looked for in this tyme and case: but yf the woman be not sufficiently purged already, then geue her no Otemeale caudels, ne other thynges that may bynde.

And thus I make an ende, praying the women readers hereof, to accept and suffise themselves with these fewe medicines here in this Chapter mentioned, and often by me and other practised. The which thyng yf they shall do so, it shall (no doubt) be occasion to me the sooner to retake this matter in hande agayne, and to refresh and furnishe the same with new and much more excellent experiences then hath been yet hitherto read or seene in any booke concerning such matters.

And as touching the aboue Trochiskes and em-
plasters described here in this place, ye shall

fynde them alwayes redy made

in Bucklers berie in

London.

In this first Chapter of the thirde booke, is first declared the matters therein conteyned, and then how the Infant newly borne must be handled, nourished, and looked to. Cap. i.



In the seconde Booke we haue sufficientely and at length declared the maners, fashyons, and diuersities of byrthes, with the daungers & per-

What is to be done when the chyld is borne.

rylles often chaunsyng to the women at theyr labours, and after the same. And now here in this thirde booke shalbe entreated what is to be done to the Infant borne. And howe to choose a Nurse, and of her office: with manyfolde medicines and remedies agaynst sundry infirmities, which eftsones happen to Infantes in their infancie.

Then after that the Infant is once come to lyght, by and by the Nauell must be cutte three fyngers breadth from the belly, and so knyt vp, and let be strued on the head of that that remaineth, of the powder of Bole Armentacke, & Sanguis draconis, Sarcocola, Myrre, & Cummin, of eche lyke muche beaten to powder: then vpon that binde a peece of wool, dypped in oyle Oliue that

The thirde booke.

that the powder fall not of. Some vse fyrst to knyt the Nauell, and after to cutte it so much, as is before rehearsed.

And farthermore some say, that of what length the rest of the Nauell is left, of the same length shall the chyldes tong be, yf it be a man chyld. Ireni, Aui-cenna sayth, that diuers thinges may be known by markyng of the chyldes Nauell: For (as he saith) When the woman is deliuered of her fyrst chyld, then behold the Nauell of the chyld: which yf in that part of it whiche is next vnto the body it haue neuer a wrinkle, it pro-tendeth & doth signifie perpetuall fruit thencefoorth sterilitie or barenesse: and yf it haue any wrinkles in it, then so many wrinkles, so many chyldren shall the woman haue in tyme to come. Also some ad to this, and say, that if there be lytle space betweene these wrinkles in the Nauell, then shall there be also litle space betweene the bearing of the chyldren: if much, it signifieth long time betweene the bearyng of them: but these sayinges be neyther in the Gospell of the day, ne of the nyght.

Now

The thirde booke.

Fol. xcir.

Now to returne to our purpose, when that the Nauell is cut of, and the rest knyt bp: annoynt all the chyldes body with the oyle of A. cornes, for that is singulerly good to confyrme, stedfast, and to defende the body from noysome thynges, whiche may chaunce from without, as smoke, colde, and such other thynges: which yf the Infante be greued withall strayght after the byrth, beyng yet very tender, it shoulde hurt it greatly.

After this annoynting, washe the Infante with warme water, and with your synger (the nayle beyng pared) open the chyldes nofethryls, and purge them of the fylthenesse. And also that the Nurse handle so the chyldes sytting place, that it may be prouoked to purge the belly. And chiefly it must be defended from ouermuche cold, or ouermuch heate.

After that the parte extant or the knot of the Nauell is fallen (the which commonly chaunceth after the thyrde or fourth day) then on the rest remaynyng, strew the powder or Asches of a Calles hooft burnt, or of Snayle shelles, or of the powder of lead, called red lead, tempered with wine.

Furthermore, when the Infante is swaddled and layde in Cradell, the Nurse must geue all diligence and heede that she bynde euery part ryght, and in his due place and order, and that with all tendernesse and gentle entreatyng, and not crookedly and confusely, the whiche also

The thirde booke.

By the onely
neglygence of
Nurses many
chylde groweth
crooke backed,
and wy legged

also must be done oftentymes in the day, for in this is it, as it is in young and tender ympees, plantes, and twygges: the which, even as ye bowe them in their youth, so wyl they evermore remaine vnto age. And even so the Infant, yf it be bounde and swadled, the members lying ryght and strayght, then shall it grow strayght and bryght. If it be crookedly handled, it wyll growe lyke wyse. And to the yll negligence of many Nurses, may be imputed the crookednesse, and deformitie of many a man and woman, which other wyse myght seeme as well fauoured as any other.

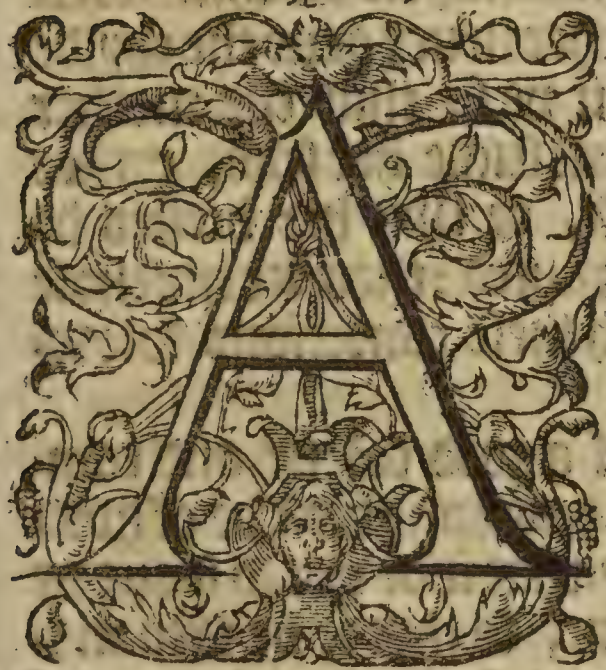
Item, let the chyldees eyes be oftentymes wypped and cleansed with a fine and cleane linnen cloth, or with sylke. And let the armes of the Infant be very strayght layde downe by the sydes, that they may growe ryght, and sometyme stroking the belly of the chylde before the besycke or bladder, to helpe to ease, & to prouoke the chylde to the makynge of water: and when ye lay it in the Cradell to sleepe, sette the Cradell in suche a place, that neither the beames of the Sunne by day, neyther the Moone by nyght come on the Infant, but rather set it in a darke and shadowy place, laying also the head ever somewhat hyer then the rest of the body.

And farther, let it be washed two or thre tymes in the day, & that anone after sleepe, in the winter with hotte water, in the Sommer with iuke warme water: neither let it tary long in the water, but vnto suche tyme as the body begyn
to

to ware red for heate, but take hede that none of the water come into the infantes eares, for that should greatly hurt his hearyng another way.

Then, to be short, when it is taken out of the bath, let it be wyped and dyed with gentle and soft linnen clothes warmed, and then to lay it on her lappe the backe bpwarde, the whiche with her handes let her tenderly stroke and rub, and then to lappe it bp, and to swaddell it, and when it is swaddled, to put a droppe or two of water into the nolethryles of it, is very good for the eye syght. And so to lay it to rest.

Of the Nurse and her mylke, and how long the chylde should sucke. Cap. ii.



S concerning the brynging bp, nourishment, and geuyng of sucke to the chylde, it shalbe beste that the mother geue her chylde sucke her selfe, for the mothers milke is more conueniente & agreeable to the Infant, then any other wo-

mans, and more doth it nouryshe it, for because that in the mothers belly it was wont to the same, and fed with it, and therefore also it doth more desyrously couet the same, as that with the which it is best acquainte. And to be short, the mothers mylke is most holsomnest for the chylde.

The mothers mylke best and most famillier is the chylde.

The thirde booke.

chylde, as Auicenna wyrteth, it shalbe sufficient to geue it sucke twice or thryse in a day. And alwayes beware ye geue not the chylde to muche sucke at once in this tender age of it, for cloyng of it, and least also it loth it: but rather let it haue often of it, and lytle at once, then fewe tymes, and ouermuche at once. For sucke as be ouer cloyde with the mothers mylke, causeth theyr body to swell & inflate, and in theyr brine shall it appeare, that it is not overcome ne concocted or digested in the chylde: which thyng yet if it chaunce, let the Infant be kept fastyng vntyll such time as that which it hath receyued already be completely digested.

Item, yf the mothers mylke be somewhat sharpe or choleryke, let her neuer geue the chylde her brest fastyng. If it be so that the mother can not geue the Infant sucke her selfe, eyther for because of sycknesse, or that her brestes be sore, and her mylke corrupted: then let her chosse a holosome Nurse, with these conditions folow-
yng.

To chosse a good
Nurse.

Fyrst, that she be of a good colour and complexion, and that her bulke and brest be of good largenesse. Secondly, that it be not to soone ne to long after her labour, so that it be two monethes after her labour at the least, and that (yf it may be) sucke one whiche hath a man chylde. Thyrddly, that she be of meane and measurable lykynge, neyther to fatte ne to leane. Fourthly, that she be good and honest of conuersation, neyther ouer hastie or yrefull, ne to sadde or so-
lome,

come, neyther to fearefull or tymorous: for these affections and qualities be pernicious and hurtfull to the mylke, corruptyng it, and passe forth through the mylke into the chylde, making the chylde of lyke condition and maners. Also that they be not ouer lyght and wanton of behauiour. Fyftly, that her brestes be full, and haue sufficient plentie of mylke, and that they be neyther to great, soft, hangyng, and flaggynge, ne to lytle, hard, or contracte, but of a measurable quantitie.

Also looke vppon her mylke, that it be not blackyshe, blewyshe, gray, or reddyshe, neyther so-
wer, sharpe, saltysh, or brackyshe, neyther thynne
and fuy, neyther ouer grosse & thicke, but tem-
perately whyte, and pleasaunt in taste.

The considera-
tion of the
Nurses mylke,

And to be short, that mylke is best and most to be chosen, of the whiche a droppe beyng mylked softly vpon the nayle of the thumbe, holding your fynger styll, it rolleth not of, neyther flyteth abroade, but yf ye moue your hande a lytle it wyll flyde of by and by: but yf when it is mylked on the nayle it spreaue abroade, and flyt by and by, then is it to thyn, but yf it cleaue styll when that ye moue a lytle your hande, then is it to spylle and thicke. The meane betweene both is best.

If it be so that the Nurses mylke be to hotte, sharpe, or colericke: then let her neuer geue the chylde sucke, her selfe beyng fastyng.

Sometymes it chaunceth, that the mothers or Nurses mylke doth fayle or decrease, the
whiche

The thirde booke.

Diuers causes
of the defect or
fayling of milke

which thyng may come by dyuers causes: as by sicknesse, by disease in the brestes, or by taking of cold in the same, and so stoppe and chudder the milke, or for because she lacketh such thinges the which myght engender mylke, ocher by ouer-much fastyng, hunger, & thyrst, the which causes must be well consydered: and then accordyng to that, minister a remedie.

Things which do augment and encrease mylke be these.

Let her vse to eate Parsenyp, eyther the seede or the roote: also the seede or roote of fenyll, sodden in the broth made with Barley or Cicer-cula, let her eate of that with other meates that she feedeth on.

Item, to eate sheepes brestes, and the mylke of them is good.

Item, take an ounce of cowe butter, and dissolve it in warme white wine, the which let the Nurse drynke.

Item, borryng vnder the brestes doth well, without scarification.

Item, a plaster for the same of Frankencense, Mastiche, and Witche, layde to the brestes, or vnder the brestes, the skynne fyrst being annoynted with oyle, least it shoulde cleaue ouer fast to the place.

Item, it shalbe very good to rubbe softlye with the hande the brestes, or els in bathyng after dinner or supper, to cause some to sucke her brest.

Item, take the oyle of whyte Lyllys, or of violettes, and myngle with it Muske, Censence,
and

and Laudanum, well tempered together, in the same dippe a peece of wooll, and clappe it to the brestes, and soke them with it.

Item, washe them, and soke them often tymes with wine, in the whiche is decocte and sodden Mintes, Roses, Violettes, and Xiloaloes. Also to eate of the broth in the whiche is sodden a Hen, with Cinamome, Maces, Cardamomum, & also the yolke of an egge.

Item, it is good for her to eate freshe Cheese and mylke, and to refrayne from all maner of great labour and harde workes.

Also pottage made of beane meale, ryce, and bread made of fyne flowre, tempred with Milke and Suger, puttyng to it also a quantitie of Fenel seede, or of the leaues, is very good for her.

Item, take of Annis seede, of Silermontanū, of eche three drams, of Christall beaten to powder two drams, & as muche of Suger, geue her this to drynke about ten dayes, at mornynge, euening, and midday.

Item, take of Fenell seede, or the leaues, & of Horehounde, of eche two handfules, of Annis seede foure drams, of Saffron beaten one scruple, also of freshe Butter three ounces, and seethe all these in sufficient water, makynge hereof a plaster, the same plaster whilst it is hot, lay it to the Nurses breste.

Item, take of Commin seede an ounce and an halfe, of clarified Hony three ounces, seethe it in fyue pyntes of water, altogether put into a newe pot, and let it seeth to the thyrde part, and

The thyrde booke.

of this decoction geue the Nurse often tymes to drynke.

Item, take of Beetes well washed one ounce, of commun halfe an ounce, of Honye syre ounces, of these myngled and tempred togeather, make an electuarie, of the whiche let her take both in the mornynge and euenynge, at eche tyme a spoonefull.

Item, take two drams of Crystall beaten into fyne powder, and deuide that in foure equali partes: one of these partes geue vnto the Nurse, the space of foure dayes to drynke, with broth made eyther of Cicer, oz elles of peason.

Also all these thynges folowynge encrease and augment Mylke in the brestes: Annis and Annis seede, Dyll and the seede, Horehounde, Cardamomum, freshe Cheese, wortes made of olde Cheese, Cicer, Cristall beatē to powdred, taken with Honye, Lettuse, Fenel, wyne in which Rosemary oz Sauery be sodden.

Item, to abstayne from benery or mans company: for yf she vse that, it shall spende and consume the mylke, and make it vnsauery and vnholysome, neyther can the chylde well brooke it, but mooste commonly shal caste it by agayne, because it can not digest it.

Also it shalbe beste that the chylde sucke not of the Mothers breste by and by, as soone as it is borne, but rather of some other womans, for a day or two, for because that the cream (as they call it) strayght after the byrth, the fyrst day

in al women doth thicken and congeale.

Item, yf it chaunce that the Nurse be ouer
sore lashed, or that she be ouer bounde, so that
she take anye medicines to remedie it : then let
another geue the chylde sucke whylest she be
recovered agayne. And when the chylde is layde
in cradell to be rocked, rocke not to faste, leaste
through ouermuche rockyng and styrryng, the
chylde's stomache turne, and the Mylke there
corrupt for lacke of rest.

Auisen aduiseyth to geue the chylde sucke two
yeres : howbeit amonge vs mooste common-
ly, they sucke but one yere. And when ye wyll
weane them, then do it not sodenly, but a lytle
and a litle, and to make for it lytle pylls of
breadye and Suger to eate, and accustome it so,
tyl it be able to eate all maner of meate : and
this shall suffice for the education and bryngyng
vp of infantess at this tyme. Notwithstandyng
dyuers other thynges here are left vnspoken of,
another tyme God wylling we shal declare them
at large.

Howe long the
chylde shoulde
sucke.

Of diuers diseases and infirmities whiche
chaunce to chyldeyn lately borne, and the
remedis therfore. Cap. iiii.



Although there be in ma-
ner infinite diseases which
happen to Infantess, as
wyrteth Hipocrates, Galenus,
Rasis,

Many diseases
of Infantess.

The thyzde booke.

Racis, Auicenna, and diuers other : yet for breuitie and shortnesse we wyl rehearse here onely suche of them whiche moſte commonly happen to the ſame, & that be theſe : exulceration of the gummes, ſixe of the belly, or ouermuch looſenes of the ſame, the belly harde bounde, the crampe, the cough, and diſtillation of the head, ſhort wyndynes, bladders on the tongue, exulceration or clypping of the mouth, apoſtume in the eares, apoſtume in the brayne, ſwelliſng and bolnyng of the eyes, ſcumme or creame of the eyes, the feuer, gnawynge in the bellye, the body ſwelliſng and puffed vp, often ſneeciſng, wheales or bladders of the body, ſwelliſng of the coddes, ſwelliſng of the ſpauyl, vnſleepineſſe, yering, appetite to parbreake, fearefulneſſe in the dreames, the mother, iſſuing out of the fundament gutte, wormes in the bellye, chaufyng, the falliſng ſickneſſe, the conſumption, the paſſye, tremblyng of the partes of the body, the ſtone, goggle eyes.

How

¶ How to cure and to remedie all these, now we
wyl shewe in order.

Firste in exulceration of the gummes, are
wont certayne pushes, and as it were whea-
les to growe on the gummes, or in the cor-
ners of the iawes, the whiche put the place to
muche greivance: and to remedie this, it shalbe
good that ye with your synger rubbe the infan-
tes gummes, and the pushes or whelkes withal,
and then to annoynt the same gummes with
oyntment made of Venes grece, Hares or Co-
nyes brayne, oyle of Camomel mixt with hony:
then take water, and in it seethe Camomell and
Dyl, the whiche water beyng hotte, powre it
on the chyldes head, holding it a foote aboue the
head.

Of exulceration
of the gums.

¶ Of the fluxe and ouermuch loosenes
of the belly.

For this take the seede of Roses, Comin, An-
nise, & the seede of Smalage, beate all these
together, and make them plaster wyle, and
lay it to the chyldes belly.

For the flux in
chyldren.

And farther, yf that it which the Infant boy
deth be of redde or yelow colour, then geue it
to drynke of the syrope of Roses, or of Crabbes,
other els of Pomegranates, tempred with a li-
tle Mynte water.

Item, take the seede of Sorrell, and beate it,
then temper it together with the yolke of a

¶ iii

rosted

The thirde booke.

rosted egge, and geue that to the chyld to eate, or els take of the same seede bruised fyrst, and then seeth it in fayre runnyng water, thereof let the chyld drynke two or thre tymes the day.

Item, take a gal, and beate it to powder, then seethe it in water, with this water temper Barlye meale, or the meale of Mellium, and make a plaster of it, the whiche laye vnto the chyldes bellye.

Item, yf that that cometh from the chyld be whetythe, then take of Nutmeges the weyght of a peny, and of whyte frankencense a scruple, or the waight of two pence, the whiche temper with the iuyce of a Quince, & geue it to the chyld to drynke.

Item, take the meale of Barlye, temper it with the iuyce of Plantane, and a lyttle wyngger, and make it plaster wyse, and lay it to the chyldes belly, but beyng fyrst a lyttle boyled together ouer the fyre.

Item, take the iuyce of Centinodium, and the whyte of an egge, & temper them together, to the whiche adde the powder of dyed red Roses, the powder of Hematites, Mastike, frankencense, Bole Armeniacke, Sanguis Draconis, & the ryues of Pomegranate, of all these mixed together make a plaster, and lay it (fyrst warmed ouer the fyre) to the Infantes belly.

Item, to washe the chyld with the water in the whiche be sodden leaues of redde Roses, is very good.

Item, take the iuyce of Camfely, and the iuyce of

The thirde booke. Fol. Cb.

of Plantane the more and the lesse, and in this put clay of an olde furnace or ouen, and make of it a plaster, and lay it to the chyldes belly.

To vnloose the chyldre beyng bounde.

If the chyldre be so bounde, that it can not long tyme haue any stooke, then make a suppositary of Hony, sodden tyl it be harde and massye, and let the suppositarye be of the length of your litle fyrger, and the bygnesse of two wheate strawes bounde togeather, then dip it into oyle, & conuey it into the chyldes fundement.

Item, lyke wyse you may make a suppositary of the stalkes and the roote of Beetes, or els of the roote called Dresse, or flouredelluce roote, made of the quantitie before spoken, and conueyed into the sitting place of the chyldre.

Item, to geue to the infant as muche Honie as a pease to drynke, and to rubbe the belly a litle, and to supple it with a peece of wooll dypped in oyle, or dypped in Bulles gall, and layd to the Navel.

Item, you may geue vnto the Nurse a medicine which hath vertue to vnbynde and loose, and the next day after let the chyld sucke her, and it wyl loose also the chyldre.

Item, take of smal Mallowes, of great Mallowes, of eche an handful, of fenegreke & Line-seede of eche an ounce, of Holyoke two ounces, of figges the number of .x. seethe al these togeather in water, and then stampe them in a mortar, and

The thirde booke.

put vnto it of Butter, and of Hennes grece, of
eche two ounces, and of Saffron one scruple,
and make a plaster of it vpon a linnen cloth, of
the thickenesse of a straw, and lay it to the chyldes
belly, a day and a nyght.

If this moue not the belly, then take of Aloes
Cicotrine one dram, of Helbores both niger &
albus, of eche .xv. graynes, beate these to powder,
then temper them with three spoonefuls of the
iuyce of Malwurt, or of Ore gall, in this licour
dippe wooll, and lay it to the Paniel the breadth
of a hande, and bynde it to the place.

Item, take the iuyce of Malwurt, and of Mill
meale, and seethe those togeather tyll they be
thicke, then make a plaster thereof, and lay it to
the belly beneath the Paniel.

Remedie for the crampe, or distention of members

If it chaunte that the infant be taken with the
disease called the crampe, the whiche for the
most part commeth of indigestion, and of the
weakenesse of the power attractiue, and special-
ly in suche chyldren the whiche be berpe fat and
moyste, then shal ye annoynt al along the backe
of the infante with the oyle of blew flowerde-
lice or els white Lillies, eyther the oyle of Rue,

If the crampe take the chyld whileste it stree-
cheth forth the armes, legges, and other mem-
bers (as we be wont in gaping or yarning) then
let

The thirde booke. Fol. Cvi.

let it be bathed and washed in water, in the
whiche prime Roses, Coufloyes, or the flowres
of Camomell be sodden, or els annoynt it with
the oyle of violettes, and the oyle of sweete Al-
mons tempered together: and if the chyld be in
great heate, annoynt hym with the oyle of vio-
lettes, or with oyle Olyue, tempered with a litle
whyte ware, and also powre on the chyldes head
the oyle of violettes.

¶ Remdie for the cough and distillation, or
Catarrhes of the head.

Sometymes the chyld is sore en-
combred with the cough, and with
distillation or runnyng of humours
out of the head, to the nose, the mouth, &
the brest, the which ye shal remedy thus.

First powre warme water on the chyldes
head, holdyng it a foote and a halfe from the
chyldes head, and so do continually the space of
halfe an houre, and in the meane whyle put a
litle Honye on the chyldes tongue to chawe up-
pon: then put youre synger into the chyldes
mouth, and depresse or holde downe the inner-
most part, or the roote of the tongue nexte to the
throte, to prouoke the chyld to vomite, and to
boyde the grosse and viscoure humours which
be cause of this yll.

Item, take Gumme Arabiche, Gumme Dra-
gant, the seede of Quinces, the iuyce of Ly-
corise, and Sugar penedium, all this beaten to-
gether

The thyzde booke.

gether, geue euery day to the chylde a quantitie with Mylke newe mylked.

Item, make Almonde mylke with Almondes blanchēd, and only the iuyce or water of fenell, whereof when it is well sodden, let the chylde eate or drynke morning and euening, or anye other tyme of the day.

And yf it be so that the chough haue exasperat and made rough the tongue and the roose of the mouth, then take of the seede of Quinces two spoonesfulles, bruiſe them a lytle, and steepe them in warme water the space of two or thre houres, then strayne the discolour & grosse water from them throughe a strainer, and that remayneth, frye it togeather in a frying panne with Suger Penidium, & the oyle of sweete Almondes, thereof making an electuarium, the whiche geue vnto the chylde to receyue: yf the chylde haue great heate with the cough, then ad vnto the same electuarie, the iuyce of a sweete Pomegranate.

Item, agaynst the cough and ouermuche heate, take the seede of whyte Popie and Dragagant, of eche two drams, of the seede of Godwardes foure drams, and beate all these togeather, and geue at once the wayght of foure pence to the chylde, with the water in whiche reasons haue ben sodden.

Item, take reasons, and dooyng away the graynes of them, seeth them togeather with water in a frying pan, so that they burne not to the bottome of the pan, then take it from the fyre, and

and beate it well in a mortar, temperyng there withall Sugar Penidium, and geue of this in the mornyng and euenyng to the chylde.

Agayne, yf the cough come of a colde cause, then take a litle Myrthe beaten to powder, and temper it with a quantitie of warmed Honye, and the oyle of sweete Almondes, and of this geue vnto the chylde.

Furthermore, the Nurse must auoyde all such thynges the which may engender cough, as vinegar, euermuche salted meates, Cheese, Nuts, & all sharpe thynges. Also she must annoynt the chylde's brest with butter, and with Dialthea.

Item, for the cough, take Reasens, and frye them in a frying panne, then stampe them in a mortar, and to that adde as muche of Sugar Penidium, with a litle oyle of violettes, & make an electuare of these, and geue to the chylde the mountenaunce of a hassell Nut.

Remedy for short wynde.

MAny tymes chaunceth also to Infantes difficultie of breathing or short windinesse, the which to remedie, take Lineseede, and beate it, & geue of it vnto the chylde with Honye: but if the disease encrease on the chylde, and that the wynde pypes in maner seeme stopped, then annoynt well the eares, and all the places about the eares with oyle Olyue, and also the tongue, for to prouoke vomite, and then powze a litle warme water into the chylde's mouth to washe it withal, and geue to it a litle Lineseede, tempered with Honye and beaten, made after the

The thyrd booke.

the fashion of an electuarie.

Item, yf the chyldre haue besydes this also the fire : then geue vnto it the Syrope of Mytels, ocher els Dates sodden with Mylke and flowre.

Agaynst wheales or bladders on the tongue.

Item, sometymes happeneth to the chyldren, wheales and blisters on theyr tongue and mouth, whiche thynges cometh of the sharpenesse and eager- nesse of the Murses mylke, the mouth and tongue of the Infant beyng so ten- der, that the least thyng that toucheth it shal offend it : Wherefore, besydes that it is great payne to the chyldre thus to be blistered by the eagernes of the milke, it is also very perillous and dangerous. For suche wheales which be not ripe & seeme blacke, betoken death : whiche yf they be whyte or yelowyshe, then they be of lesse peryl.

Agaynst this yll, take violettes and Roses, and see the them in a litle Rose water, and there- with washe the blysters.

Item, take the iuyce of Lettuse, the iuyce of
Petie

Netie morel, and the iuyce of Burselayne, which when they be well commixt and tempered together, annoynt therewith the welkes. And yf the foresayde blysters or welkes be blackishe : then adde to the foresayde iuyces, Licorise beaten to powder.

Item, if the same be very moyste, then take Myrre, Galles, the rine of Frankencense, beate them wel together, and temper them with Hony, and annoynt the chyldes tongue therewith.

Item, take the iuyce of Mulberies before they be fully ripe, other els of bnyrpe grapes, whiche is called Uergeus, and with that annoynt the tongue.

Item, it is very good to washe the tongue with redde wine, and then to strew vpon it the powder of Galles, or els of the barke or rine of Frankencense.

Yf ye wyll haue a quicker medicine in operation and sharper : then take Bole armeniake, Psidium, and Sumach, of ec he thre drams : also of Galles two drams, of Alome one dram, all these beate together, and searse then through a searser, and strew that powder on the blisters.

Item, yf these wheales be reddishe and cause muche spittle to gather together in that place, then let the Nurse vse suche thynges whiche are moyste and colde, and let her chawe in her mouth very small a fewe fatches, of the whiche lay on the Infantes mouth and tongue.

Item, Amilum or starch tempered together with
Rose

The thyrde booke.

Rose water, & put on the chyldes tongue, is good.

Item, take the iuyce of Pomegranates, the iuyce of Quinces, or the iuyce of Oringes, and do of this on the chyldes tongue in lyke maner: but yf the wheales or blysters be somewhat yellowyshe, then to these iuyces spoken of before, adde the iuyce of Lettuse and of Purselane. But if the wheales seme whytyshe, then take of Myrre and of Saffron, of eche one dramme, of Suger candye two drams, and beate these to powder, and lay of it on the wheales and tongue.

Of exulceration or clefture, chappynge or chynnyng of the mouth.

Sometymes by reason of the hardnes of the Nipples pappes, the chyldes lippes and mouth be exulcerate, hauyng in maner of cleftes & chynes in them: and in this case take tozed woll, & dyppe it in the iuyce of Plantane, or els in Butter molten, or in fresh Hens greace, euery of them beyng warme, and with this annoynt the mouth and lippes of the chyld.

Of appostumation and running of the eares.



When that humoures and matter ys sueth out of the eares, whiche properly commeth of aboundaunt humours in all the bodye, and mooste specially in the head: then take a peece of woll, and dyppe it in Hony myxt with redde wyne, to the whiche is put also a lytle quantitie

quantitie of Alome beate to powder, or of Saffron, then make of the same as it were a tente, and put it in the chyldes eare, and when the tent hath sucked and drawen to it the humours and fylthynesse of the eare, then take it out, and put in newe: and yf that which commeth out of the eare be as matter, then take of sodden Hony, & temper it with water, put of it into the eares: or els take the powder of Galles, temperyng it with vineger, and do lyke wyse.

But yf the chyld haue great payne and dolour by wyndynesse, ventositie, and the humours in this place, then seethe Organy and Myrrhe with oyle Olyue, and sobeyng warme, put of it into the eares.

Of apostumation in the head.



If there be any apostume engendered in the head, (which many tymes chaunceth) (the which causeth the chekes & eyes to be greatly payned, & the eye sight to waxe wannyshe or tawnye: then must be applyed suche thynges which may refrigerate & coole the braynes: as, take of the iuyce of Gowardes, the iuyce of Nyghtshade, and iuyce of Burselande, and temper them with the oyle of Roses, in this dyppe a peece of wooll, and lay it to the head, and as often as it waxeth drye, dip it agayne.

Of

The thirde booke.

Of the swelling or bolnyng of the eyes.

Against swelling and bolnyng of the eyes, take Licium, and temper it with womans Mylke, & put of it into the chylde's eyes, and bynde it to the place with a fyne and soft linnen cloth, then afterwarde washe the eyes with water in which Camomel and Basil haue ben sodden. Yf that in this swelling the eyes be not red, neyther the browes swollen: then take Myrre, Aloes, Safron, and the leaues of Roses, and temper al these, and stiepe them in olde wine, and binde it to the chylde's eyes with some linnen cloth, and into the chylde's nose put a quantitie of Ambre dissolved in womans Mylke.

Of the scum or whyte of the eye.

Against the scum or whyte of the eye, which for the moste parte happeneth to chyl dren through ouer muche crying and weepyn g, take the iuyce of Solatrum, and drop of the same into the chylde's eye, and yf by the same chaunce the bayne of the eyes waxe reddishe, or be swollen, then annoynt them with the same iuyce.

Against immoderate heate, or the feuer.

If the Infant be in great and behement heate, contrary to nature, the whiche is called a feuer: fyyst it shalbe the Nurses part, to eate & vse such thynges the which coole and moysten.

Also

Also to geue unto the Infant of these thynges folowynge. The iuyce of Pomegranate, the water of Gourdes, Sugar, with a lytle Camphere mixed therewithall, tempered well together. Item, it is very good to prouoke it to sweating.

Item, take of the iuyce of Wormewood, of Plantaine, Malowes, and Singrene, and temper them altogether, and seeth them a lytle on the fyre, in the whiche also mixe Barlye meale, and make a plaster of all these, and lay it to the chylde's brest. Also take the oyle of Roses, and the oyle of Poplar, and myre them together, with this oymment being colde, annoynt the chylde's forehead, the temples, the armes, the handes about the wrestles, and the pulses, and the feete about the ancles.

Item, take of Barly meale, and of dyled Roses and poudred, and temper these with the water of Roses, and the water of Endiue, and make thereof on the fyre a plaster, the which lay to the chylde's brest somewhat warme.

Also as often as the chylde is washed, let it be done with water in whiche is sodden suche thynges whiche coole: As Letice, Purslayne, Endiue, Plantayne, and such other.

Agaynst frettyng or knawynge in the belly.

If the chylde be bered with frettyng and knawynge in the belly, the whiche thyng ye shall knowe by the immoderate crying of the chylde, and that it turneth from one syde to another with great crying: then shall you take

R. i.

warme

The thirde booke.

warne water, wherin hath ben sodden Lauan-
der, Cummin, Fenell seede, or the seede of Wyll,
and oyle Olyfe, tempering them together: and
herein dyp a peece of Wooll, and therewith soke
the chyldes belly oftentymes.

¶ Agaynst swelling of the body.

When the chyldes body or any part therof
is swollen and puffed vp: then take the
toppes of Elder tree, and of Malworste,
and seeth them in white wine, and therein lay
the Infant, specially if it be not taken with ouer
great heate: but yf so be that with swelling
in the head the belly be swollen also, then take
Myrrhe, Aloes epatike, and Saffron, and beate
them altogether, & temper them with the iuyce
of Beanes, and lay it to the chyldes head.

¶ Agaynst often sneesing.

Sometimes the Infantes be sore troubled
and vexed with often sterutation and snee-
sing, whiche thyng yf it come of the Apo-
stume in the head: then shall ye minister suche
thinges to the head which refrigerate and coole,
whether it be oyles, oyntmentes, iuyces of the
herbes, or other trynges. If this come of any
other cause then of Apostume: then take Basyl,
be it greene or dry, and put of the iuyce or pow-
der of it into the chyldes nose. But yf this snee-
sing come and begin with heate, and that the
chyldes eyes seme as they grewe inwarde for
payne thereof: then lay to the chyldes head the
leaves

leaves of Burdaine, or Gouarde, cut in thinne
lices and tempered with the oyle of Roses and
Barley meale, and also the yolke of an egge.

¶ Of whelkes in the body, and the cure.

These whelkes yf they appeare blacke vpon
the body, they signifie peryll of lyfe, and so
much the more, the greater quantitie that
there is of them: but yf they seeme whytyshe or
reddyshe, it is no peryll, and may easily be cured.
Wherefore take the leaves of the red Rose, the
leaves of Mirtils, and of Tamariscus, and seeth
these in water, and in that water wet a linnen
cloth, and soke therewith the whelkes.

Item, lykewyle it is good to annoynt the
same with the oyle of Roses, of Mirtylles, and
Tamariscus. If the whelkes be whyte or reddish,
then let them be rype before ye minister any
thyng to them: and when they be open and be-
gyn to matter, then to cleanse, purifie, and to
dry them, beyng rype and broken. It is very
good to washe the same whelkes with Mulsun
or Hydromell, in whiche Saltpeter is dissolved.
Mulsun and Hydromell is, water and honye
sodden together.

¶ Agaynst swelling of the Coddes.

Many tymes chaunceth to chyldren (tho-
rowe ouermuch crying) swelling about
the Coddes, and sometymes burstenesse,

R. ii.

and

The thirde booke.

and swelling in the inner part of the thyghes, the whiche swelling sometymes cometh by inflammation or great heate, and sometymes with onely wyndynesse. If it come of wyndynesse, then the coddes wyll sometymes appeare so styffe as a labour, and shyne as it were an horne. The remedie for this is, to take a quart of double beare woort, and therein seeth of the leaues of Bay halfe a handfull, of Rue a quarter of an handfull, of fenell, Wyll, and Camomell, of eche a meane handfull, cut and bruse all these hearbes together, and seeth them from the quart to the pinte, then strayne them strongly from the liquer, in the whiche liquer seeth so much Beaneflowre as may serue to make a plaster, thereto addyng at the latter ende two or thre spoonefulles of oyle of Camomell, and lay this plaster hotte to the coddes. If the swelling come of heate, then alay the same with some colde hearbes, suche as I haue oftentimes spoken of before.

Agaynst swelling of the Nauell.

Also sometymes the chyldes Nauell swelleth, and specially strayght after the byrth when it is cut. For this, take Spyke celtike, and seeth it in the oyle of Almondes myxed with a lytle Turpentine, then in this dyp wool, and lay it on the place.

But yf so be that this swelling come of ouermuch crying, cough, or of a stroke or fall: Then take bytter Lupines, and the powder of
fayre

The thirde booke. Fol. Crij.

layre olde linnen cloth burnt to powder, & temper these with red wine, and then in this dyp a peece of tow, and lay it to the Nauell.

Agaynst vnsleepynesse.

Agaynst vnsleepynesse, that is, when the chylde is destitute & wanteth his due & naturall rest, all the while crying and weeping. For this take two heades (with the seedes therein conteyned) of whyte Popie, and with one sponesfull of Rose water, and three or foure droppes of Vineger, stampe them in a mortar reasonably, then adde thereto two sponesfulles of womans mylke, and the waight of an halfe peny of Saffron, with halfe a sponesfull of Barlie flowre, the which yet stampe a lytle together agayne, and then lay it in a fyne thynne double linnen cloth, and apply it to the forehead from one temple to the other.

Item, geue the chylde to drynke a lytle of the syrope of Popie. Also to annoynt the temples with the oyle of Popie is very good.

But yf this vnsleepynesse come of the impuritie of the Nurses mylke (as many tymes it doth) then take of the oyle of Violetes, and put vnto it a lytle quantitie of Vineger, and of this licour drop oftentymes into the chylde's nosethilles. Or els take the oyle of Roses, & temper it with the iuyce of Lettise, and therewith annoynt the head and the stomacke of the chylde, & farther, see that the Nurses mylke may be amended.

R. iij.

Against

The thirde booke.

¶ Agaynst yeryng oz the hyckat.

This yeryng commeth eyther of coldnesse of the stomacke, other els of ouermuche fulnesse, oz for lacke of meate & emptines of the stomacke, oz els by some hot and colerike qualitie bytyng vpon the mouth of the stomacke.

As often as it commeth by the abundaunce of meate and fulnesse, the remedie is to prouoke it to vomite. If by coldnesse of the stomacke, then annoynt the stomacke with the oyle of Bayes warmed, other els lay to the stomacke a plaster made of the seede of Byll, beaten and tempered with the iuyce of Myntes.

But yf it chaunce by any heate oz coleryke qualitie, then take the oyle of Violettes, oz of Roses, the iuyce of Endiue, oz of any other suche hearbes, the whiche haue power to infrigidate and coole, and temper the same with womans mylke, and annoynt therewith the chyldes stomacke.

And when it proceedeth by defect and lacke of meate oz emptines of the stomacke, then geue to the chyld to feede vppon mylke, and other good holisome thynges to suppe, neyther passe not greatly though the childe reiecte and vomite by agayne that the whiche it receyueth, for so muche euer wyll remayne in the stomacke that shalbe sufficient to sustayne it, and meanely to nouryshe it.

Agaynst

Agaynst often parbreaking by weaknesse and
feeblenesse of the Stomacke.



Agaynst ouermuche parbreaking,
beate foure graynes of Cloues, and
geue it to the chyld to drinke, with
foure or fiue sponesfulls of red wine.

Item, take of Mastike, whyte
frankensence, and the leaues of the redde Rose,
so much as shalbe sufficient, and all these beaten
togeather, temper them with the iuyce of Myn-
tes, & make a plaster of it, laying it to the chyldes
stomacke. But yf the chyldes vompyng be very
beheement, then put vnto these foresayd thynges
a quantitie of Rose vineger.

Item, take fine meale, and bake it so hotte in
an Oven, or els in a fryng panne ouer the fyre,
tyll it ware browne, then beate it to powder
agayne, putting it into wineger, and to these ad-
the yolke of an egge hard rosted, Mastike, fran-
kensence, and Gumme Arabike, and temper all
these with the iuyce of Myntes, makynge of it a
plaster, the whiche lay to the chyldes stomacke,
and to the chyldes mouth & nose holde a warme
toste of bread.

Causes of this yll be three. The fyrst, yf the
chyld haue taken more mylke then it is able to
concocte and digest. The seconde, yf the sur-
les mylke be ouerthirne, wateryshe, and fluyshe.
The thyrde, yf the sarze mylke be impure, fe-
culent, and corrupt. These causes prouoke vo-
mite, and specially yf the chyld also haue a

The thirde booke.

weake and waterish stomache: wherfore ye must helpe the Infant after this maner.

First let the chylde sucke lesse then it did before, and then also marke that which the chylde doth perbrake, whether it sauer sharply lyke vineger, and that it be whytyshe: for if it be so, then take of whyte Frankensence. viii. graynes, of dyed Rue. xx. graynes: beate these to powder, and geue it to the chylde to drynke with the syrope of red Roses.

Oz els let the Nurse chawe Cummin, and so put it into the chyldes mouth: Geue also of the syrope of Pomegranates, with the powder of dry Myntes to the chylde.

Take Masticke, Accatia, Xilaloes, Galles, whyte Frankensence, tosted Bread, of eche lyke muche, beate them togeather, puttyng to of red Roses, and temperyng it with the conserue of Roses, and lay it to the chyldes stomache.

But if it so be that the perbraking of the chylde sauer not after the fashyon of vineger, but after some other sowre sauour, and that it be not whitish, but pale or yelowyshe: then geue it the iuyce of Quinces, & lay this plaster vnto the chyldes stomache, Take Barly meale, wyld Mulberies, and Psidium, beate all these together, and temper it with Rose water, and lay it to the chyldes stomache.

And furthermore, yf the chyldes stomache be somewhat wateryshe, and slowe in digestion, then annoynt it with the water of Roses, in the which Muske hath been dissolved, oz els the water

water of Mirtylles, and geue it to drynke the iuyce of Quinces, with a lytle Cloues and Sugar, or with a scruple of Nutmegges therewith tempered and myxed.

Agaynst fearefull and terrible dreames.

Also sometimes the chyldren be vexed and vniquieted with fearefull and terrible dreames in their sleepe, whiche thynge for the most part commeth of the abundaunce of foode, and ouermuch meate or drynkes, whiche for the copie and superfluitie thereof, can not be conuict ne overcome of nature, wherefore necessarily it putrifieth and corrupteth: the noysome and hydious vapours whereof, styng vp to the head in time of sleepe, cause these terrible fantasies in the sleepe. And thus it may be remedied. First take heede that ye lay not the chylde to sleepe strayght after it hath fed, and also let it lycke a litle honie, swallowing it downe, so that by it, such thinges the which be some what harde to digest and concoct, may the soner be digested, and the refuse the more easily to descende into the guttes.

Item, euery day geue to the Infant halfe a dram of the electuarie called Diamuscum, or Diaplicis. Also Triacle in this case is very good, taken with mylke, as sayth Rasus.

Agaynst issuing forth of the Fundament gutte.

For the issuing forth of this gutte, when the chylde labourerh to ease it selfe: Take Mirtylles, Acome cuppes, red Roses dyed, burnt

The thirde booke.

burnt Hartes horne, burnt Alome, Goates
hoofe, Balauftium, and Galles, of ech lyke much,
and seeth all these together with water, so long
till the water haue receyued the strength of the
ingredience, and with this water being warme,
washe the gut, and so conuey it into the body a-
gayne, as I taught you in the seconde booke.

¶ Agaynst Tenasmus.



Enasmus is a disease when the
child enforceth it selfe to the stoole,
and yet can do nothing, the which
thyng oftentimes chaunceth to
chylde, most commonly procee-
dyng of cold. Agaynst the which, ye shal vse these
remedies. Take Garden Cresses and Cummin
seede, of eche lyke muche, beate them togeather,
and temper them with olde Butter, and geue it
the chylde to drynke with colde water.

Item, take Turpentine, & lay it vpon coales,
whose fume let the chylde receiue beneath in the
fundement, the fume beyng inclosed rounde
about with clothes.

Item, take Tarre, and lyke wyse make fume
of it, receiuyng the fume as before.

¶ Agaynst Wormes in the belly.

Sometymes there breede Wormes in the
guttles, of the bygnesse and quantitie of such
as are wonte to be in olde Cheese, called
Mytes, and some lyke Lyce. And sometyme in
the belly be engendred Wormes of the bygnesse
of

of earth wormes, called Cases. Agaynst these vse this remedie. Take the water of Centumnodia, and geue it to the chyld to drynke with mylke.

Item, take of whyte Corall, the scrapyng of Iuory, of Hartes horne burnt, and of Treos, of eche a scruple, of Suger Candie one ounce and an halfe, of the water of Centumnodia, so much as shalbe sufficient to temper all these thynges before, and of this make suppositaries, ministring to the chyld every day the waight of two drammes.

Other wyse accordyng to Rasis mynde. Take of Commin seede as muche as shalbe sufficient, and temper it with Oxe gall, makyng thereof a plaster, the whiche ye shall lay to the Infantes Navel.

Item, oyle Olive taken and drunken a small quantitie thereof, is very good to kyll all maner of wormes which breede in the gutte, neere to the fundement. Take the fynest Cotten, & therof make suppositaries, the which ye shall annoynt with the oyle of wormewood, or of Rue, or of the kynelles of Peaches, or the oyle of bytter Almondes, and so to conuey it into the chyldes syttyng place.

Item, it shall greatly profite the chyld, yf it be washed in the water in whiche is sodden wormewood, and the leaues of Peaches.

Item, an oyntment for the same. Take of wormewood, & of Lupines, of ech two drams, of
Siler

The thirde booke.

Siler montanum, Commin, Cockle, Centorie, and Centonicum, and of Hartes horne burnt, of eche foure drammes, al these thynges beaten together, temper them in the oyle of Wormewood, or of bytter Almons, the wayght of two ounces, puttyng to it foure drammes wayght of ware, and make hereof an oynment, and annoynt the chyldes belly therewith by the fyre, or in some warme place.

Item, take of Cockle two drammes, of Wormewood and Masticke, of eche one dram, of Aloes, red Corall, of eche two drammes, of Coriander preparat, sixe drammes, beate all these well together. Adde also to these, of Rie meale three ounces, of Lupines beaten to powder, sixe drams, of Saffron two drammes, temper all these in two ounces of the iuyce of Rue, and foure ounces of the iuyce of Wormewood, or of the oyle of the same, and make hereof a plaster, and lay it vnto the chyldes Hauell the breadth of a hand.

Item, geue the chyld the wayght of foure pence of the powder of Aloes cicotrine, with fayre water fyrst sodden & sweeted with Sugar, or els with single beare, and this no doubt is soueraigne.

Item, agaynst the great and long Wormes. Take of the iuyce of Wormewood, and of Oregall, of both two ounces, of Colocinthis. iiii. drammes, temper all these well together, adding to it a lytle Wheaten meale, & make hereof a plaster, the whiche lay to the Hauell of the chyld.

Item,

¶ Item a bath for the same.

Take Worme wood and Gaules, & seeth them in water, and let the chyld be bathed in it by to the Nauell.

¶ Of chaufyng or gallyng in any place of the body.

Against gallyng or chaufyng of the chyldes skin, by reason of the acrimonie & sharpnes of brine or sweat: Take Mirtils and beate them to powder, and strew thereof on the place. Item, take of Irios, of the red Rose, of Cyprus, of Tragacantum, so much as shalbe thought sufficient, and beate them all, or part of them, & strew of the powder on the chaufed place.

Item, take of the oyle of Roses one ounce, of whyte Frankencense one dramme, and melt these togeather. and then take. viii. graynes of Camphere dissolved in Rose water, and myxe therewithal, and of all this make an oynment, and annoynt the chaufed place therewithall. Also Vnguentum album, & Vnguentum rubeum be good for this purpose.

Item, the decoction and fomentation with the water wherein Plantaine, Knotgrasse, Docke rootes, or Bursa pastoris is sodden, is very good for the same.

¶ Of the falling sicknesse.

Sometymes these Infantes be bered and Sencombred with the falling sicknesse, and that two maner of wayes. One is, that it

The thirde booke.

it hath this disease strayght forth with the byrth: Cause of the which, is colde and yll humours in the head and braynes. Another is, that it taketh this infirmitie after the byrth by some accidentall causes, in which case, yf it leaue not the chylde, being a man chylde, before he be .xxv. yeeres of age, and the woman chylde, about the tyme of hauyng her fyrst flowres, if it forsake them not in this space, neyther by the myght of Nature, neyther of Medicines, then is it lyke neuer to depart from them.

Agayne, yf this disease come not by Nature, but by some accidentall cause afterwarde: then geue diligent heede that the Nurses mylke be very good, & conuenient to the chyldes Nature. And for the same purpose, yf necessitie require, it shalbe very good to purge and cleanse the Nurses body with due and meete medicines, and she must auoyde all such thinges the which do coole and moysten: and to suffer the chylde to receyue no more mylke at once, then it may be able well to digest.

Agaynst this cruell disease, authours muche commende the roote of a Pionie, onely hanged about the chyldes necke.

Item, the same roote dryed & beaten to powder, and so oftentymes geuen to the chylde to take, sometymes with drynke, sometymes with potage, pap, or mylke, or any other wayes. Likewise the seede of Pionie is very good.

Furthermore powre now and then into the chyldes noethryls of oyle of Castorium, or the
oyle

The thirde booke. Fol. Cxviij.

oyle of Costus, oz of Euforbium: Also let the chylde smell to Rue and to Asa fetida.

Item, to hange Viscum quersinum, whiche is gathered in Marche the Moone decreasyng, about the chylde's necke, is very good. Diuers other thynges there be whiche myght be here rehearsed, but this shalbe sufficient at this tyme.

Consumption oz pynning away of the body.

When the Infant falleth away, and the flesh rebateth, remayning nothing but as it were skyn and bone, and thereby the chylde wareth sickely: Then let the Infant be often bathed in water, in whiche hath been sodden the head and the feete of a weather, so long tyll the fleshe part from the bones of his owne accorde: and euery tyme that the chylde commeth forth of the bath, fyrst let it be wyped and dyled cleane, and then annoynt it with this oyntment. Take fresh Butter, oyle of Violettes, and oyle of Roses, of eche one ounce, of the fatte of freshe Porke halfe an ounce, of whyte ware two drammes: melt all these thynges together, and make an oyntment of it, annoynting therewith the chylde's body.

Item, take whyte ware, Swines grese, Sheepes tallowe, freshe Butter: melt all these thynges together, and strayne them, making of it an oyntment, and annoynt the chylde withall once oz twyse euery day. But the chiefe hope
of

The thirde booke.

of restauration, must be in light, restorative, and pure nouryshyng meates.

¶ Of lassitude, wearinesse, or heauinesse of the chyldes body.

Sometymes it chaunceth, that the chyldes members of the body be so feeble, as though it had the paulsey, so that with that partes of the body the chyld can not helpe it selfe, neyther can it lyft by the handes, armes, ne stande on the fete. If the chyld haue this disease whylest it sucketh, then let the Nurse be comforted and strengthened with such thynges the which haue vertue to heate and to dry. Also let the Nurse feede only on rosted or fryed meates, and that she forbear from mylke, fysh, and hard or salt powdered fleshe: for commonly this disease springeth of cold and moyst humours, beseeging the sinnewes.

Furthermore, let not the Nurse vse any watered wyne, or myxed, but mere and in his owne kynd: and let her bath the chyld euer before she geue it sucke, after, annoyntyng it with the oyle of Castorium, or the oyle of Costum, and let the chyld drynke euery day a quantitie of this electuarie folowynge.

Take garden Mynt, Cinamome, Cummin, dry Roses, Masticke, Fenugreke, Valeriane, Amios, Doronicum, Zedoarium, Cloues, Saunders, Xilalocs, of eche a dram, of Muske halfe a dram, beate al those to powder, and confict them with claryfied & depured honye, making thereof
an

The thirde booke. Fol. Cxviii.

an electuarie, of the which euery day geue vnto the chylde the weyght of two pence to drynke with white wine. If the childe haue this disease in euery part of the body, then take an ounce of Ware, and a dram of Euforbium, the which Euforbium ye shall beate in a morter with. b.oz. vi. droppes of Oyle, tyll it be perfectly beaten, then temper them together ouer the fire, adding ther vnto so much Oyle as may be sufficient to make a scarcloth, and lay it to the raynes of the backe.

C Of tremblyng of the body, or of certayne members of the body, called the Palsey.

If the chylde happen to be vexed with tremblyng or shakynge of the body, or the partes thereof, so that ye feare the Palsie of the same part, or that the fallynge sicknesse shoulde ensue: then remedy it after this meanes. Take the oyle of Roses, and the oyle of Spykenarde, & temper them together, warming it, and therewith annoynt the backe or reines, and the other shaking members: ye may also take any other oyle the which hath vertue to warme and calefie, as the oyle of Bayes, and such other.

Item, to bath the chylde in the decoction of Rosemary, Sage, Tyme, Hysope, Sauery, Alexander, Smallege. &c. is very soueraigne.

If you can not cure it by this meanes, then demaunde farther counsaile of the Phisicians.

S. i.

Agaynst

The thirde booke.

Agaynst the strangury or stone, with stop-
pyng of the vrine.

STrangury, Disſury, and the difficultie in ma-
kyng of water, oftentymes chaunceth to
chyl dren by reason of the ſtone, or about-
daunce of grauell, other els many times of ſome
other viſcous, ſlimie, and flegmatike matter, in
maner & ſourme of dregs or ragges ouerwhar-
ting and croſſyng the paſſage, wherby the brine
ſhoulde paſſe forth, in ſuch wyſe, that (without
great paine) the chylde can not make his water,
and that yet but in ſmall quantitie at once.

Which of theſe wayes ſo euer it come, it ſhal-
be very good to bath the chylde by to the ſtauell
in the decoction of Peritorie of the wall, Mal-
lowes, Holyoke, Lyn ſeede, Lillie rootes, Fene-
greke, and Sauery, other els with a ſpunge or
double linnen cloth dypped therein, eſtſones to
foment the ſhare and neather part of the belly
agaynſt the bladder.

But in men chyl dren cheefely foment them
on the ſtraightes, betweene the fundement and
the coddes, the whiche place in Latine is called
Perineum, for there in them lieth the necke of the
Bladder. After this bathyng or fomentation,
dry the places fomented, and whyleſt they be yet
red with bathyng, annoynt them with the oyle
of Scorpiſons, to be had at the Apothecaries, or
els the oyle called Petroleum.

And yf further neede ſhall require it, ye may
apply

apply this plaster folowynge to the foresayde places. Take of Parseley, and of Alexander, of eche halfe an handfull, of Peritorie, Malloves, Holyoke rootes, of eche an handfull, seeth these hearbes together in good stale ale, tyll such time as they be soft, then powre out the ale from them, and stampe the hearbes in a stone morter, adding thereunto of the seedes of fenegreke and Line, of eche halfe an ounce, beyng fyrst beaten to subtyll powder.

Item, of Cummin seede the wayght of foure grotes, beaten lyke wyse to fyne powder, of the oyle of Scorpions, Petroleum, or other appertiffe oyle one ounce and an halfe, of all these wel commixed togeather, make a plaster, and lay to the places aforesayde. To speake of any medicines to be administred in wardes, it is but folly, for so muche as it is so harde to cause a chylde to take any thyng within foorth.

This difficultie in makynge water, may ensue by other meanes, wherof we neede not to speake at this tyme.

Of goggle eyes, or looking a squint.

If the chylde haue goggle eyes, or that it looke a squint, then fyrst sette the cradell in suche a place, that the lyght may come directly and ryght in the chyldes face, neyther in the one syde, neyther in the other, neyther aboue the head, lest it turne the syght after the lyght. Also marke on whiche syde that the eyes doo goggle, and let the lyght come vnto it on the

S. ii.

con.

The thirde booke.

contrary syde, so to retorne the syght. And in the nyght season set a Candell on the contrary syde, so that by this meanes, the goglyng of the eyes may be returned to the ryght place. And further it shalbe good to hang clothes of dyuers and freshe colours on the contrary syde, and specially of the coloure of lyght greene, or yelow, for the chylde shall haue pleasure to behold these straunge colours. And in returnyng the eye sight towarde such thynges, it shalbe occasion to rectifie the syght agayne. And this shalbe sufficient for this time, of the diseases of chyl dren after they be borne, making here an ende of this third booke, for this tyme.

Of such thinges the which shalbe entreated of in this fourth Booke.

Cap. i.

Here in this fourth booke (by the leaue of God) shal briefly be declared suche thynges whiche may farther or hinder the conception of man, whiche as it may be by diuers meanes letted and hyndered, so also by many other wayes, it may be farthered and amended. Also to knowe by certayne signes and tokens, whether the woman be conceyued or no, & whether the conception be male or femiale, and finally certayne remedies and medicines to farther and helpe conception, and thereafter we wyll (accoording to our promise in the Prologue) set forth certayne bellifying receiptes, & so make an ende of this whole treatise.

S. iij.

Of

The fourth booke.

Of conception, and how many wayes it may
be hindred or letted. Chap. ii.



Here is nothyng vnder heauen,
which so manifest and playnely
doth declare and shewe the mag-
nificent myghtinesse of the om-
nipotent lyving GOD, as doth
the perpetuall and continuall
generation and conception of lyving thynges
here in earth, by the whiche is saued, prologed,
and augmented the kynde of all thynges. And
where that this almightie Lorde and creatoure
hath so institute and ordayned, that no singuler
thing in it selfe (here vpon the earth) should con-
tinuallly remayne and abyde: yet hath he geuen
from the beginning, and instinced such a power
a vertue vnto these mortall creatures, that they
may engender & produce other like thynges vnto
them selfe, and vnto their owne similitude, in
the which alway is saued the seede of posteritie.
Were not this prouision had by almightie God,
the nature and kynde of all maner of thynges
woulde soone peryshe and come to an ende, the
whiche vertue and power of generation many
tymes doth halte and misse, by defect and the
contrary disposition in the partes generaunt.
As ye may euidently see in the sowynge of Corne
and all other maner of seede. So that there be
in all maner of generation three principal parts
concurrent to the same, the sower, the seede so-
wen, and the receptacle or place receyving and
contaynynge

contaynyng the seede. If there be fault in any of these thre, then shall there neuer be due generation, vnto such tyme as the fault be remoued, or amended.

The Earth vnto all Seedes, is as a Mother and Nurse, contaynyng clyppynge and embracing them in her wombe, feedynge and fostering them as the Mother doth the chyld in her Bellye or Matrix, vntyll suche tyme as they come vnto the growth, quantitie, and perfection due vnto theyr nature and kinde: But yf this seede conceived in the bowles of the earth, do not proue or fructifie, then be thou sure that eyther there is let in the sower, in the seede, or els in the earth.

The earth may be ouer waterishe, dankishe, or ouer hot and dry, or els full of stones, grauell, or other rubbysh, or full of yll weedes, whiche may strangle and choke the good corne in his growynge: also the seede may be putrified, or otherwyle viciate and corrupted, and so the lyfe and spirite of it banyshe away and destroyed. The sower may vnoordynately strew and cast the seede on the earth, &c. So that yf there be lette in none of these partes concurrant to generation, or that the lettes be remoued and doone awaye, then doubtlesse wyll ensue multiplicati- on and encrease ment of that kynde, of the whiche the seede commeth, accordyng to the naturall enclination, the whiche almyghtie God hath enplanted and sette in the kynde of all thynges.

The fourth booke.

How many wayes conception may be letted,
and how the causes may be knownen.

Capit. iii.

Every thyng then, the whiche doth encrease in this kynde, must fyrst be conceived in the wombe and Matrix of the mother, which is apt & conuenient for the receypte of such seede. And (as I sayd before) as there may be defect and lacke in the mother, receiuing the seede, so may there be fault and defect in the sower, and in the seede it selfe also.

And in women there may be foure generall causes by the whiche the conception may be impedit and let: ouermuche caliditie or heate of the Matrix, ouermuche coldnesse, ouermuche humiditie or moystnesse, and ouermuch drynesse. Any of these foure qualities exceeding temperancie, may be sufficient causes to let due conception.

Wherefore the ryght excellent Philitian Hipocrates in the fyfth booke of his Amphorismes sayth, All such women the which haue cold and dense Matrices can not conceyue, and suche as haue moyst & watery the Matrices can not conceyue, for the power of the seede is extinguished in it: also hauing dry Matrices, conceyue not, for the seede perisheth for lacke of due nutriment and fode: but that Matrix the whiche hath all these qualities in temperancie, that is fruitefull. This is Hipocrates saying, the whiche thyng
also

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxij.

also may be well perceyued by a familiar example of the sowynge of corne.

For yf it be sowne in ouercolde places, suche as be in the partes of a Countrey called Scythia, and in certayne places of Almayne, or in suche places where a continuall Snowe, or froste, or where the Sunne doth not shyne, in these places the seede or grayne sowne, wyll neuer come to p[ro]oue, nor fructifie, but through the behemente coldnesse of the place in the whiche it is conceyued, the lyfe and quicknesse of the grayne is bitery destroyed and adu[n]ticated.

And further, as concernyng ouermuch humi[d]itie, yf ye sowe your grayne in a fen or maryshe and watery ground, the seede wyll peryshe thow the ouermuch abundance of water, which extinguysheth the liuelynesse and the naturall power of the grayne and seede.

Likewyse yf it be sowne in such a countrey or place where is ouergreat heate, not tempered with water and rayne, or yf the yeere be so dry, that there come no rayne at all to alay the extreme and feruent heate of the Sunne: then shall the seede sowne, wyther and dry away, and the power of it be consumed and burnt.

And if it be sowne in dry places, where neuer cometh rayne, or on the sand and grauely places, in such a place the grayne can neuer take, ne p[ro]oue, ne be conceiued in it, to come to any fruite or p[ro]fite.

Wherefore, yf the Matrix be distempered, by

The fourth booke.

the excesse of any of these foure qualities, then must ye reduce it agayne to temperauncie, by such remedies as I shall shewe you hereafter. Likewyse may there be defect and lache in the man: as yf the seede be ouer hot, the which the woman shall feeie as it were burnyng hot, or to cold, the which she shall feeie as it were in manner colde as yse, or to fluye or thinne &c. Diuers others wayes also it may be letted, whiche shall not neede here to be rehearsed.

Nowe yf the woman can not conceyue, the cause comynge of ouermuch frigiditie or coldnesse in the Matrix, that shall she know by these tokens. She shall feeie great colde about the sydes, the reynes of the backe, and the Matrix, her brine shal appeare white and thinnishe, and sometymes also somewhat spisse and thicke, and all manner of colde thynges shall noy her, hotte thynges shall greatly comfort her.

But if it come by ouermuch humiditie of the Matrix, that shall she know by these signes. If the body of her be of a fat & grosse disposition, yf with her flowres issue forth at the begynnyng and the latter ende of them, certaine viscouz and watery substaunce, and that her brine be white, thicke, and sometime as it were mylke: Also that she feeie great cold and payne about the Matrix and priue partes, and much dolour in her sides, and in the reynes of her backe.

And when ouermuche heate or dryth in the Matrix is cause of the hynderaunce of conception, then is the brine hygh coloured, redde, or yelowe,

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxij.

lowe, beyng thinne, with certayne moles appearing in the water: the woman hath great thyrst, and bytter ryfing or belchynge out of the stomache into the mouth. And many tymes they that are in this case, are very spare and leane in all theyr body, hauyng also but small quantitie of flowres, the whiche thyng may happen eyther by ouermuche watche, or ouermuche fastyng, labour, trauayle, sorowe, sicknesse. &c. But suche women whiche naturally are thus spare and leane, may very hardlye be brought to a temperance agayne, and be made apt to conceyue. And this shalbe sufficient for this tyme, to knowe whiche qualitie by his excellence causeth sterilitie. Now wyll we shew how it shalbe knowen, whether lacke of conception be in the woman, or els in the man, and how to know whether the woman be conceyued or no, accordyng to the mynde of ryght expert Physicians.

Chowe to knowe whether lacke of conception be of the woman or of the man, and howe it may be perceyued whether she be conceyued or no.

Chap. iiii.

If ye be desyrous to knowe whether the man or the woman be hynderaunce in conception: Let eche of them take of meate

The fourth booke.

Wheate and Barly cornes, and of Beanes, of
eche. vii. the which they shall suffer to be steeped
in their severall brine the space of twentie and
foure houres: then take two pottes, such as they
set Geliflowes in, fyll them with good earth,
and in the one let be set the Wheate, Barly, and
Beanes, steeped in the mans water, and in the
other the Wheate, Barlye, and Beanes steeped
in the womans water, and every morning the
space of. viii. or. x. dayes, let eche of them with
theyr proper brine water the sayde seedes sown
in the foresayd pottes: and marke whose potte
doth proue, and the seedes therein conteyned
doth grow, in that partie is not the lacke of con-
ception, and see that there come no other water
or rayne on the pottes: but trust not much this
farre set experiment.

Item, accordyng to Hipocrates wytyng, yf ye
wyl knowe whether the fault be in the woman
or no, then let the woman receyue into her body
bnderneath, beyng well and closely closed round
about, the fume of some odoriferous perfume, as
Laudanum, Storax calamite, Lignum Aloes,
Muske, Ambre, and such other, and yf the odour
and savour of such thynges ascende thorow her
body vnto her nose, ye shall vnderstande that
sterilitie commeth not of the womans parte: yf
not, then is the defect in her.

Item, yf she take Garlicke, beyng pyllled out
of the huskes, and conuay of it into the priue
partes, and yf the sent of it ascende vppre tho-
rowe the body vnto the nose, the woman is
faullesse,

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxliij.

faullesse: yf not, then is there lacke in her. These tokens, although they haue a certayne reason and appareance, yet be they not alwayes vnfalliche, but onely lykely.

Whether she be conceyued alredy or no, ye shal knowe by these signes. First the flowres issue not in so great quantitie as they are wont, but waxe lesse and lesse, and in maner nothyng at all cometh from them. Also the brestes begin to waxe rounder, harder, and styffer then they were wont to be: the woman shall long after certayne thynges, otherwyle then she was vled to do before that tyme, also her bryne waxeth spythe and thyckyshe by retention of the superfluities. Also the woman feeleth her Matric very fastly and closely shutte, insomuche that as Hipocrates sayth, the poynt of a needle may scarce enter.

To knowe whe-
ther the woman
be conceyued, or
no.

Item, to knowe whether she be conceyued or no, accordyng to Hipocrates mynde, in the .v. of his Ampho. Geue vnto the woman when she is goyng to bedde, a quantitie of Millicratum to drynke, and yf after that drynke she feele great payne, gnaowyng, and tumblyng in her belly, then be ye sure that she is conceyued. This Millicratum is a drynke, made of one part Wine, another part Water, sodden together, with a quantitie of honye.

But yf ye be desyrous to knowe whether the conception be man or woman, then let a droppe of her mylke or twayne be mylked on a smothe glasse, or a bryght knyfe, other els on the nayle
of

The fourth booke.

of one of her fyngers, and yf the mylke flewe and spread abroad vpon it by and by, then it is a woman chylde: but yf the drop of mylke continue and stande styl vpon that the which it is mylked on, then is it a signe of a man chylde.

Item, if it be a male, then shal the woman with chylde be well coloured, and lyght in goyng, her belly rounde, bigger towarde the right side, then the left (for commonly the man chylde lieth in the right syde, the woman in the left side) and in the time of her bearing she shal better digest & like her meate, her stomacke not hyng so queisie ne feble.

Of certayne remedies and medicines which may further the woman to conceyue. Cap. v.



A sterilitie then for the most part ensueth and commeth of the distemperauncie of one of these foure forenamed qualities, wherefore the remedie and cure of the same when it chaunceth, must be done by suche thynges the which haue contrary power and operation to the excessiue qualitie, for by that shal it be reduced to his temperauncie agayne.

As yf that coldnesse and moystnesse exceeding temperancie in the Matrix be occasion of sterilitie, then muste she apply suche thynges to that place the whiche be of nature hotte and dry, the which may calisie and warme the place, and also dry vp the yll moystnes and humours contey-
ned

ned in the same, hindering conception.

And for because that the most generall and common cause of sterilitie doth proceede of colde, wateryshe, and flegmatike humours, whiche bedeaung the inner sydes and holownesse of the Matrix, with the porte and mouth thereof also, causeth that the seede sent from the man into the womans Wombe or Matrix, can not there remayne ne cleaue: neyther is the mouth or port of the Wombe apt or able to close it selfe sufficiently after reception of the seede, the flewme and slime humours withstanding it, the which vnlesse they be discussed, or dyled away, the seede alway slippeth and flydeth forth as fast as it entreth in.

Wherefore to remedie and to do away the foresayd impediment, ye shall vse the meanes which foloweth.

First, within a day or two after the womans Termes be passed, let her by the aduyce of some Physitian take a Purgation, whiche may purge flegme and waterishnesse, and then the next or the thyrde day after, let her lye in a Bath by almost to the Nauell, in the whiche Bath ye shall decoct and seeth these hearbes folowynge. Take of Bay leaues, Malloves, redde Myntes, Mirtilles, Camomel, Maiozan, Marygoldes, of eche an handfull, of Sage three handfulles, of Mercurie and Brankursin of each two handfulles, seeth all these hearbes together in fayre water, or (yf it were for a noble woman) in halfe water, and the other halfe redde wine,

The fourth booke.

Wine, in this bath let her remaine the space of a good halfe houre, and a litle before that she come forth of the bath, geue her to drynke of this electuarie folowynge.

Take of Spyke, Nutmegges, Cloues, Balingall, Cinamome, and long Pepper, of eche the wayght of a grote, of Annis seede the wayght of two grotes, of Sage leaues dried, the wayght of three grotes, all these thynges (eche by them selues) beaten to small powder, temper them altogether in so much pure clarified Honye, as may be sufficient to receyue all the powder, other els commixt with this powder so muche fyne Sugar, as the wayght of the powder amounteth vnto, whereof ye shall geue vnto her at once the wayght of two grotes, with .viii. ix. oz. x. sponesfulles of good Whyte oz. Claret Wine, other els with good Maluesey oz. Muscadell.

And all this must be done eyther fastyng in the mornynge one houre before breakfast, oz dinner, other els. v. oz. vi. houres after dynner, so that it be not done vppon a full stomacke. But yf ye take the bath and the electuarium in the mornynge, then at nyght three oz. foure houres after supper, let her receyue vnderneath her clothes the vapoure of these thynges folowynge into the priuite. Take of Lauender dried, of vnset Tyme, Bay berries, Iuie leaues, of eche halfe a lytle handfull, of whyte Frankensence the wayght of foure grotes, of Sage dried, oz other, two lytle handfulls of Rosemarie
leaues

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxvi.

leaves one handfull, seeth these together in fayre water, and when they be perfectly sodden, then let the woman set her selfe ouer the vapour thereof, sitting grouelyng, other els set on a couer made for the nonce with a tunnell or conduite, thoro we the which the vapour may be directed into the womans priue passage, the neere thereby, that the vertue thereof may approche vnto the wombe or wombe port.

Ye may also in the same water dyppe wooll, or els fyne linnen cloutes, and so conuay it into the priue passage, there to remayne the space of one or two houres. This bath, electuarie, and vapour, I counsell them that haue neede, to vse them the space of three dayes continually, and then, the thyrde nyght to company with her husbnde, and by the grace of G D she shalbe spedde. There be sometymes, that with the vse of the bath onely, or the electuarie alone, eyther the vapour, without any farther remedie, haue been aptified to conception, but who that vseth it as is aboue mentioned, woorketh the surer way.

These shalbe sufficient remedies for want of conception, proceeding of colde, moyste, and flegmaticke humidities. Nowe yf it come by any distemperauncie in heate and dryeth: then let her be purged of collicke, or other brynnd heate bred in the body, by thynges apt and meete for that purpose, and then afterward to vse bathes, electuaries, and vapours, of moderately cooling thynges, as of Roses, violettes, Lettuse, Purs-

C. i.

layne,

The fourth booke.

layne, Blantayne, and diuers other.

But forasmuche that most commonly the br-
aptitude of conception (in women hauyng their
health) spryngeth of the superfluitie of colde and
moyst humours (whereof we haue already spo-
ken) therefore all other impedimentes leste a-
part, ye shall holde ye content with this for this
tyme. For yf I woulde make mention of all
the occasions whereby conception may be let
or impedit, then shoulde I here alleage and
bryng in all the diseases that may happen to a
woman in that partes, with the remedies there-
of, whiche were a long woork, and not proper
for this volume.

In this. vi. Chapter is entreated of dyuers
bellisying receiptes, as ye may
hereafter reade.

TH E embellyshyng or bellisying me-
dicines wherof I entende to speake
here, be not to be vnderstanden to
be of that sort, whereby any Adisti-
cious or outwarde forraigne brantie
or set colours shoulde be acquired or gotten, the
whiche farre fet & damnable curiositie, I doubt
not but that all honest and vertuous sadde wo-
men doo vtterly abhorre and contemne: but
here mine only meaning is, to shewe how to re-
moue certaine blemishes, and as it were weeds
of the body, through the whiche many tymes
the naturall beautie thereof is obscured and de-
faced, For as in a fayre Garden, be it neuer so
beautifull,

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxvii.

beautifull, yet yf it be not regarded and looked vnto, the weedes entermynglyng them selues among the good hearbes, wyll defourme and emperyshe the good grace of them. For in the earth, be it neuer so well dilygented and pycked, yet alwayes therein wyll remayne some sparkes and seedes of vnlooked for weedes, the whiche ever when tyme or season serueth, Nature thrusteth forth.

Lyke wyse in the body of man, among the good and necessary humours, is some sparke or qualitie of yll and not necessary humours, with the whiche nature beyng offended and cloyed, expelleth and dryeth them forth sometymes into one place, and sometymes into another, accordyng to the aptitude or feeblenesse in resistance of the place receyving it, and the force or violence of nature (there with greened) sendyng it, so that the superfluities founde in the vpper part and face or superficie of the skynne, ensueth by the superfluitie and dominion of lyke matter conteyned and commixed in the vaynes among the blood, and is a great euidence and testimonie thereof. But here I wyll not speake of all kyndes of vtter diseases spryngyng of this inwarde corrupted humours, but onely of suche thynges as commonly chaunce to men and women without any imperishment of their health.

As for example, fyrst I wyl briefly declare the fyltynesse of the head, called in Latin Perrigo,

The fourth booke.

in English the Dandruffe of the head, the which is, when that in kembing and scratchyng of the head, certayne whyte scales as it were Branne, falleth of from the head, and lyeth very thicke among and vnder the heare.

Of the causes and remedies of Dandruffe of the head.

The cause of this Dandruffe commeth by abundance of flegmaticke humours, commyxt with the blood, the whiche dayly and hourly by incessable sweatyng, euaporateth and issueth forth of the pores, in the skynne that couereth the parbone, and as fast as it issueth forth, dryeth on the vtter superficie of the skynne, and there remainyng and geatheryng together, becommeth euery day more and more, therto greatly helping the Forrest of heare which couereth, harboureth, and retayneth such superfluities, more in those places then in any other where no heare groweth. And most commonly they that haue blacke heare haue more of Dandruffe then other. This humour suffered ouerlong to raigne on the head, destroyeth and corrupteth the rootes of the heares, making them to fall of in great plentie, and specially in kembyng. And although this superfluitie be not cleanly, yet notwithstanding it shalbe no wysedome for me to teache, ne any other here with encumbred to learne, howe to stoppe it, for feare of further inconueniencies, but onely I counsell you once in tenne dayes at the least, to walke

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxviii.

washe and scoure the head cleane with good lye, wherein let be steeped in a linnen bagge of Annis seede, Commin, dyed Rosemarye, fenegreke, and the ryndes of Pomegranate, of eche lyke muche: & beware that after the washyng of your head ye take no colde, before the head be perfectly dyed.

And whereas some say, that they which vse ofte washyng of theyr heades, shalbe very prone to head ache: that is not true, but only in such that after they haue been washed, roll vp theyr heare (beyng yet wette) about theyr heades, the colde whereof is daungerous to byring them to Catarrhes and poses, with other inconueniencies. Wherefore all diligence muste be had, that the head may be exactly well dyed with warme clothes, whylest the head is yet hotte of the washyng, and then neuer feare no inconueniencies, but rather conuenience and commoditie: and let this be done also fastyng in the mornynge, or els one houre before supper, or .v. houres after supper. This ofte washyng shall purgfy the skynne of the head, and stedfaste the heare from fallynge, leuiate and lyghten the head, with all the senses therein conteyned, and greatlye comfort the braynes.

To take awaye heares from places where
it is vnseemely.

Item, sometymes heare groweth in places vnseemely, and out of order: as in many maydens and women the heare groweth so lowe

The fourth booke.

in the foreheades and the temples, that it disfigureth them. For this ye may vse three wayes to remoue them: eyther to plucke by one after another with pincers, such as many women haue for the nonce, eyther els with this lye folowynge.

Take newe burnt Lime foure ounces, of Arsenicke an ounce, steepe both these in a pynt of water the space of two dayes, and then boyle it from a pynt to the halfe.

And to proue whether it be perfect, dyppe a feather therein, and yf the plume of the feather departe of easily, then it is strong enough: with this water then annoynt so farre the place that ye woulde haue bare from heare, as it lyketh you, and within a quarter of an houre plucke at the heares, and they wyll folowe, and then washe that place muche with water wherein bryanne hath ben steeped: and that done, annoynt the place with the whyte of a newe layde egge and oyle Olyue, beaten and mixt togeather with the iuyce of Singrene or Burslane, to alaye the heate engendred of the foresayde lye. The thyrde way to remoue heare, is with a plaster made of very drye pitche. and vppon leather applyed to the place, the heares beyng fyrste shauen, or cutte as neare as can be with a payre of Cyfers.

Nowe when the heares be by by the rootes, then to let them that they growe no more: take of Alome the wayght of a groate, and dissolue it in two spoonefulles of the iuyce of Myghtshade, or of Benbane, and therewithall annoynt the place

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxix.

place two or three tymes euery day, the space of
ix. or .x. dayes, and heare wyll growe no more in
that place.

To do away freckens, or other spottedes
in the face.

These freckens, and such other spottedes in the
face, or other where in the bodye, may be
taken away by often annoynting them
with the oyle of Carter, to be founde alwayes at
the Apothecaries, and suerly that oyle is soue-
rayne for that purpose.

Item, take Eleborus, and seeth of it an ounce
in halfe a pint of strong whyte vineger, tyl halfe
be consumed, the mirt therewith Hony. iiii. spones-
fulles, and the weight of a peny of Mercury sub-
limed (to be had at the Apothecaries) & seeth these
together agayne tyl it become thicke: with this
annoynt the freckens, and it wyll destroy them.
This is also very good for the Morphewe, and
other discolouration or staynyng of the skynne.

To destroy Wartes, and suche lyke excres-
cences on the face or els where.

FOR this purpose nothyng is so excellent,
as euery day once, the space of three or foure
dayes, to drop one drop of strong water, cal-
led Aqua fortis, on them, for this destroyeth them
in very short tyme.

Item, the iuyce of a red Onion, and the iuyce
of Marygoldes, is very good for the same.

Item, dissolve a lytle Mercury sublimed in
fayre water, and therewith drop the Wartes, and
they

The fourth booke. ¶

they wyll soone wyther and consume away.

To cleare and clarifie the skin in the hands,
face, or other part of the body.

For this there is nothyng better then to take
one spoonefull of the oyle of Tarter, and fyre
spoonefulles of water, with these commixed
together, washe the handes, face, and other par-
tes, for it scoureth, cleanseth, and puryfieth the
skynne soueraignely, and wil suffer no filthinesse
to remayne in the pores of the flesh: and this oyle
of Tarter is made one this wyse.

Take wine lyes dyed, the whiche the Golde-
smythes do cal Arguyl, and beate it into pow-
der, and then fyll thereof a Goldsmythes crudi-
ble, and set it among hotte coles, tyll the Ar-
guyl begyn to waxe blacke: then take it out of
the fyre, and let it coole, and bynde it in a linnen
cloute, and hang it a lytle ouer the vapour of
hotte boylng water: that done, hang this clout
with the Arguyl in a glasse with a brode mouth,
so that the bagge or clout touch not the bottonne
of the glasse, and the water or oyle called Tarter
wil drop downe a lytle and lytle: and the sooner,
yf it stande in a very colde and moyst sellar.

Item, to scoure the handes and the body, some
use to washe theyr handes with the powder of
Dresse, whiche is the roote of the blew floure-
deluce, and some with Beane floure.

Item, the yolke and whyte of egges is good
for that purpose, and so is hony.

To

To souple and mollifie the ruggednesse
of the skynne.

Annoynt the skynne with the oyle of sweete
Almondes, the same is very good also for
chippinges of the lippes or handes.

Item, Beere suet is very proper for the same
purpose, especially beyng well washed and tem-
pered with Rose water, wherein hath been dis-
solved two or thre graynes of pure Muske.

Agaynst todayne rysing of pimples through
vnikind heate in the face, or els where.

Take the whyte of an egge, and beate it well
with a spoone, & then therewith commixe
two spoonefulles of Salet oyle, one spoone-
ful of Rose water, another of the iuyce of Sorel,
and halfe a litle spoonefull of Vineger, here with
annoynt the pyples and rysinges.

To keepe and preferue the teeth cleane.

First if they be very yelow and filthie, or blac-
kyshe, let a Barber scoure, rubbe, and pycke
them cleane and whyte, then after to main-
teyne them cleane, it shalbe very good to rubbe
them euery day with the roote of a Mallowe,
and to picke them cleane that no meate remaine
and putrifie betweene the teeth.

Item, take of the small whyte pybble stones
which be founde by the water sydes, and beate
them in very smal powder. hereof take an ounce,
and of Wallicke oile dram, myngle them togea-
ther,

The fourth booke.

ther, and with this powder once in. xiiii. dayes rub exactly your teeth, and this shall keepe your teeth fayre and white: but beware ye touch not, ne bere the gummes therewithall.

Item, to stable and stedfast the teeth, and to keepe the gummes in good case, it shalbe very good euery day in the mornynge, to washe well the mouth with red wine.

¶ Of stynkyng breath.

Stinck of the breath commeth either by occasion bred in the mouth, or els in the stomack.

If it come from the stomacke, then the body must be purged by the further aduice of a Physitian. If it be engendred in the mouth only, then most commonly it commeth of some rotten and corrupted holowe teeth, which in this case must be plucked out, and the gummes well scoured and washed with Vineger wherein hath been sodden Cloues and Nutmegges. The cleanly keepynge of the teeth doth conferre muche to the saner nesse of the mouth.

¶ Of the rancke sauour of the armeholes.

This vice in many persons is very tedious and lothsome: the remedie whereof is, to purge fyrst the cholericke and egre humours, originall causers of the same, and afterwarde to wash the armeholes oftentymes with the water wherein Moorme wood hath ben sodden togeather with Camomel, and a lytle quantitie of Alome.

Item,

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxi.

Item, Authours doo wyte, that the rootes of Artichaughes (the pyth pyked out) sodden in whyte wine & so drunke, doth cause the stencche of the armeholes, and other partes of the body by the brine. For (as Galen also dooth testifie) he prouoketh copie and plentie of stynkyng and vnsauery brine from all partes of the body, the whiche propertie it hath by speciall gyft, and not only by his hot qualitie.

And thus here I make an ende
of this fourth and
last booke.

FINIS.



